





DISCARDED  
FROM

LEGISLATIVE LIBRARY

Victoria, B.C.





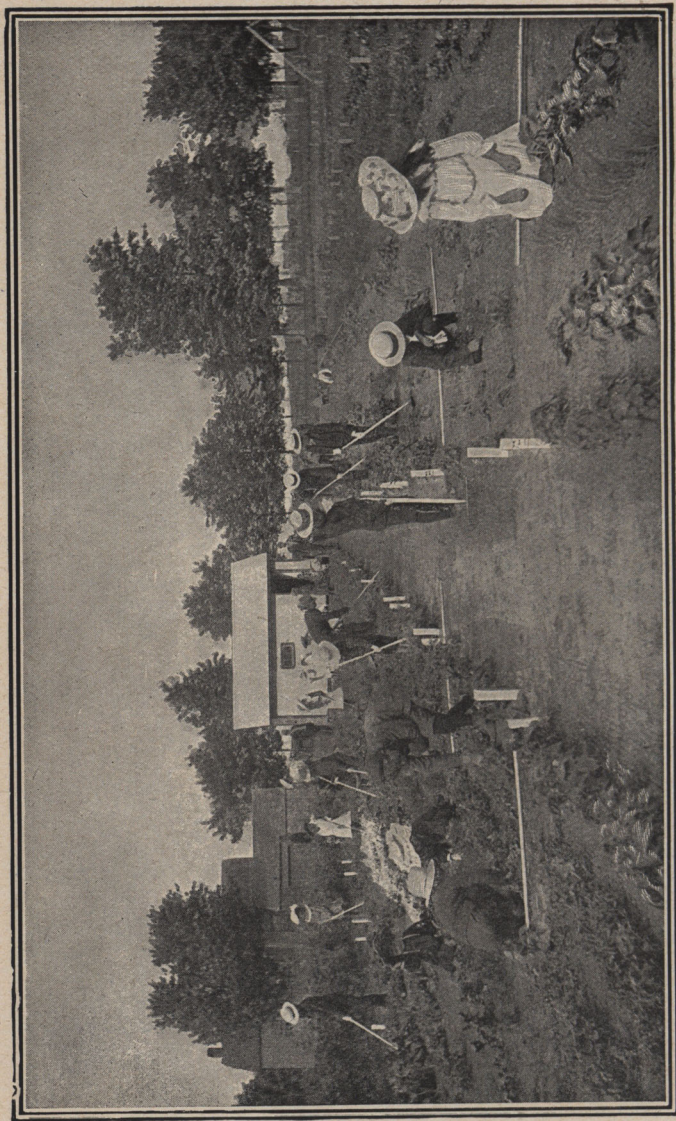
PROVINCIAL LIBRARY,  
VICTORIA, B. C.











*L. B. Whyte, Photo.*

**A MACDONALD SCHOOL GARDEN.**

# ELEMENTARY AGRICULTURE AND NATURE STUDY

BY  
JOHN BRITTAIN, D.Sc.

PROFESSOR OF NATURE STUDY, MACDONALD COLLEGE, QUE.

REVISED EDITION  

---

WITH SUPPLEMENTS

*Prescribed for use in the Schools of British Columbia*



THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK CO., LIMITED  
TORONTO

PROVINCIAL LIBRARY  
VICTORIA, B. C.



B.C.  
507  
3862

Copyright, Canada, 1909, by THE EDUCATIONAL BOOK COMPANY  
of Toronto, Limited.

## INTRODUCTION

---

THIS volume is written by men who are in love with their work, who are masters of their subjects, who are in sympathy with teachers and children, and who desire to serve them.

Every child begins life helpless, ignorant and selfish. All experiences which help it out of that state are educational in the right direction. Looking to that desirable end, one would hardly choose Reading, Writing and Arithmetic for the foremost places in the course of Study. Since all knowledge begins in wonder, one may be permitted to wonder whether the dullness of some children in school is not usually a symptom of a course of education not wisely arranged, rather than an evidence of sluggish or weak mental faculties.

We are all part of Nature. Our lives—the transient and the eternal, the human and the divine in us—are sustained by natural processes under natural laws. A study of Nature lies at the beginning of all true education ; and in the elementary classes Nature Study might well be central, with Household Science and Manual Training on either side of it. These furnish a fine framework for the building of character through education. Subjects, lessons and exercises are worthy of place as they serve to lead out the powers of body, mind and spirit towards



ability, intelligence and goodwill in such a way that these will seek and find expression through co-operation with others for the common good. The methods of instruction which guide children to acquire knowledge from the study of Nature usually influence them to pursue studies in Science, Literature and History. Meanwhile they are being trained to think, to observe, to investigate and to understand. The doing of something definite with their new knowledge, under educational supervision, becomes a means towards the formation of good mental habits. In this volume the lessons have been arranged with the difficulties graduated to suit the growing capacity, strength and intelligence of the learners. Progress may be discerned by an increase in the quickness of perception, by an improvement of the memory for names, facts and rules, and still more by the habits of thoroughness, truthfulness and self-reliance which are revealed by the work done.

Nature Study deals with facts and principles on which the systematic study of Agriculture should be founded. It does for Agriculture what Manual Training does for technical and industrial education. It furnishes a wide basis of general intelligence and ability from which to specialize towards particular occupations. The chapters on *The Physics of Some Common Tools, Fruit Raising, and Irrigation* are a fitting sequel to those on *Agriculture and Nature Study*.

Because all school training in observing, investigating and recording should include lessons in reading, writing,

## INTRODUCTION

v

drawing and arithmetic, the exercises prescribed in this volume become lessons in expression of a highly valuable sort. They nourish growth of thought, and also clear and correct expression of thought. They minister to the children in developing intelligence, personal ability and love of working with others to attain some end for the good of all.

We all are trustees of life and its opportunities for the children. The main thing in the trust is to have the next generation of trustees ready for their duty and privilege. "Of such is the Kingdom of Heaven."

To love to live is well,  
To live to love is better,  
And this the best of all,—  
To love to live to labor.

JAS. W. ROBERTSON.

MACDONALD COLLEGE,  
QUEBEC.



# CONTENTS

---

## FIRST YEAR

### AUTUMN LESSONS

	PAGE
I. GERMINATION AND EARLY GROWTH OF PLANTS . . . . .	9
II. THE ORGANS OF VEGETATION . . . . .	12
III. ORGANS OF VEGETATION ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	14
IV. THE ORGANS OF REPRODUCTION IN FLOWERING PLANTS . . . . .	18
V. ORGANS OF REPRODUCTION ( <i>continued</i> ) . . . . .	21
VI. INSECTS AND THEIR RELATION TO PLANT LIFE . . . . .	24
VII. HOW TREES AND SHRUBS PREPARE FOR WINTER AND SPRING . . . . .	28
VIII. OTHER SEASONAL CHANGES IN AUTUMN . . . . .	32
IX. SOME IDEAS ABOUT MATTER . . . . .	35
X. SOMETHING ABOUT WORK AND ENERGY . . . . .	39

### WINTER LESSONS

XI. CONTENTS OF THE POTATO TUBER . . . . .	44
XII. THE CONTENTS OF A CARROT . . . . .	49
XIII. WHAT WE CAN FIND IN A GRAIN OF WHEAT . . . . .	52
XIV. THE COMPOSITION OF CELLULOSE, WOOD, STARCH AND SUGAR—CHEMICAL UNION . . . . .	54
XV. WHAT BECOMES OF WOOD WHEN IT BURNS . . . . .	59
XVI. WHAT CARBONIC ACID GAS IS COMPOSED OF— OXIDATION . . . . .	62
XVII. THE COMPOSITION OF THE AIR . . . . .	65
XVIII. THE COMPOSITION OF WATER . . . . .	68
XIX. AMMONIA GAS AND ITS COMPOSITION . . . . .	71

# CONTENTS

vii

	PAGE
XX. WHAT THE GLUTEN OF WHEAT IS COMPOSED OF .	73
XXI. VEGETABLE OILS AND ACIDS AND A SALT . .	75
XXII. TREES IN WINTER . . . . .	80

## SPRING LESSONS

XXIII. THE RETURN OF THE BIRDS . . . . .	83
XXIV. THE SEED AND THE LITTLE PLANT WITHIN IT .	87
XXV. THE SEASONAL CHANGES OF SPRING — SPRING CALENDAR . . . . .	92
XXVI. THE SCHOOL GARDEN . . . . .	94
XXVII. THE MAKING AND TRANSFERENCE OF STARCH IN PLANTS . . . . .	99
XXVIII. WHAT PLANTS MAKE STARCH OUT OF . . .	103
XXIX. THE BREATHING OF PLANTS . . . . .	109
XXX. THE TRANSPIRATION OF WATER BY PLANTS . .	112

## SECOND YEAR

### AUTUMN LESSONS

I. THE CELLULAR STRUCTURE OF PLANTS . . .	115
II. THE COURSE OF THE SAP IN PLANTS . . .	120
III. FERNS AND OTHER GREEN FLOWERLESS PLANTS .	123
IV. MUSHROOMS . . . . .	126
V. MOULDS . . . . .	129
VI. YEASTS . . . . .	132
VII. BACTERIA AND THEIR WAYS . . . . .	135

### WINTER LESSONS

VIII. THE DOMESTIC ANIMALS OF THE HOME AND FARM	142
IX. THE COMPOSITION AND CARE OF MILK . . .	148
X. A LESSON ON LIMESTONE . . . . .	153



XI.	THE SOLID CONSTITUENTS OF THE SOIL . . . . .	PAGE 159
XII.	AIR AND WATER IN THE SOIL . . . . .	164

## SPRING LESSONS

XIII.	THE PROPAGATION OF PLANTS FROM BUDS . . . . .	167
XIV.	IMPROVEMENT OF CULTIVATED PLANTS . . . . .	174
XV.	A LESSON ON TILLAGE . . . . .	177
XVI.	ROTATION OF CROPS . . . . .	179
XVII.	HOME AND SCHOOL GROUNDS . . . . .	181

---

THE PHYSICS OF SOME COMMON TOOLS . . . . .	185
FRUIT RAISING IN BRITISH COLUMBIA . . . . .	245
IRRIGATION . . . . .	277

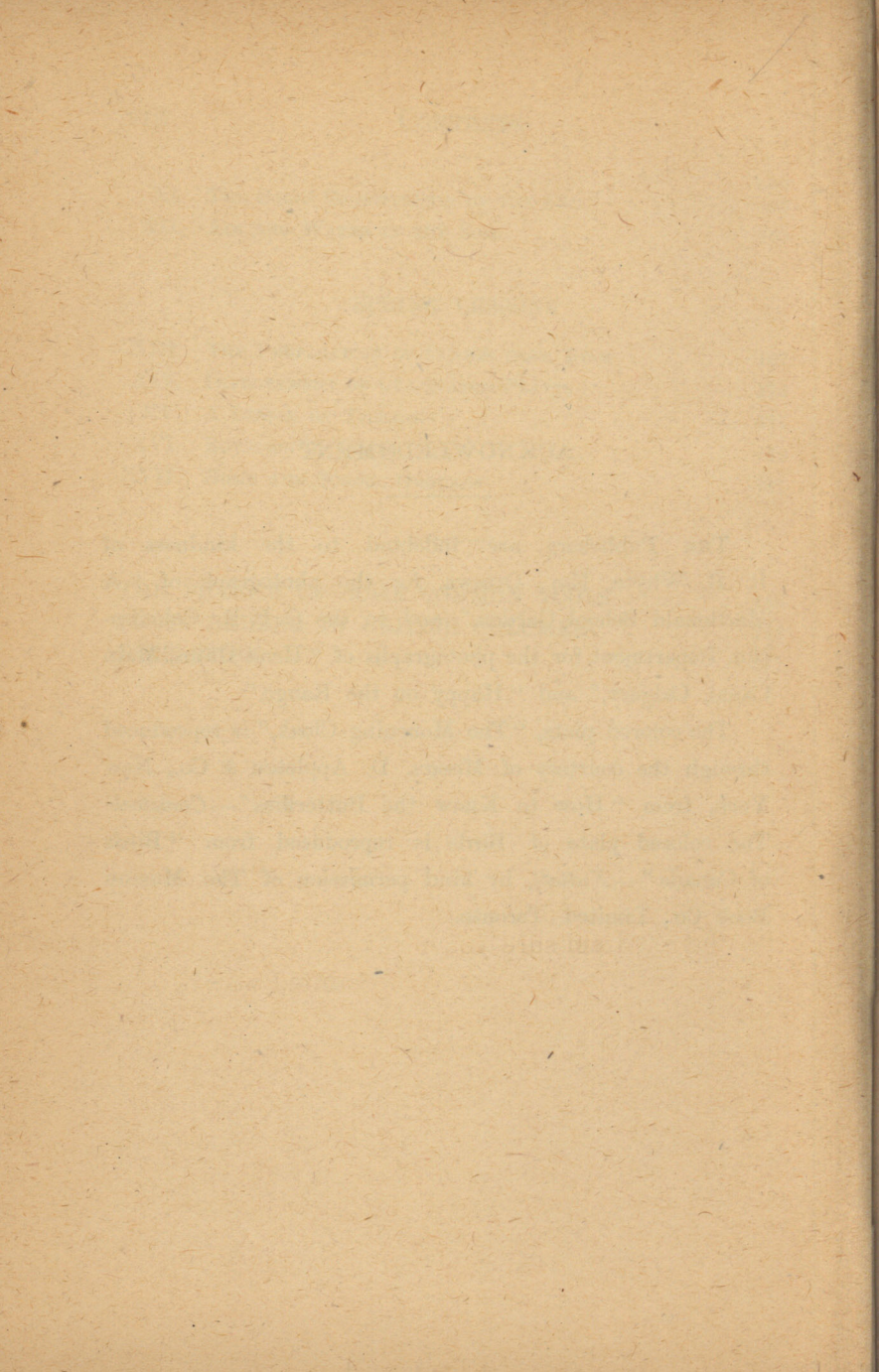
## ACKNOWLEDGMENT

---

THE Publishers are indebted to the kindness of R. B. Whyte, Esq., Ottawa, for the photograph of "A Macdonald School Garden," and to the C. P. R. Colonization Department for the photographs of "Head Gates, Main Canal, Calgary," and "Happy on the Range."

The colored plate, "The Mourning-Cloak," is reproduced through the courtesy of Messrs. D. Appleton & Co., New York, from "How to Know the Butterflies"—*Comstock*. The colored plate of Birds is reproduced from "Birds of Canada"—*Nuttall*, by kind permission of The Musson Book Co., Limited, Toronto.





# FIRST YEAR

---

## AUTUMN LESSONS

### I. GERMINATION AND EARLY GROWTH OF PLANTS

*Material to be prepared in advance.*—A supply of seeds for the class, some of this year, some of the year preceding ; a few potato tubers ; two or three flower-pots filled with soil ; a number of plates and saucers, and of circular pieces of blotting or filter paper or of flannel for the germination experiments.

WE are about to begin to-day a course of lessons on plants. We shall try to find out something about their lives by watching them from day to day, and by trying various experiments with them. I am sure you will learn to like them better as you become better acquainted with their ways of life, and see that they—like ourselves, and every living thing—have their own work to do, their own difficulties to overcome, and their own enemies to avoid.

We shall find, too, in our studies of plants, that there is a vast number of kinds or *species* of



them, of all forms and sizes, from those so minute that they are far too small to be seen with the naked eye, to the great trees of the forest. You have noticed, probably, that some plants never bear flowers, no matter how long they live, and that these flowerless plants do not bear seeds. Since most of our conspicuous and useful plants bear flowers and grow from seeds, we will begin our studies with the *seed-plants*—plants which may be grown from seed.

To begin with, I must ask you to get together the seeds of a number of common plants—beans, corn, wheat, peas, clover, etc., including some tree seeds. Get some seeds which were ripened this year, as well as some left over from last year. They all look dry and lifeless, yet no doubt the most of them are capable of awakening. They are merely dormant, asleep as it were, or undergoing hidden changes which make it possible for them to be roused into activity by influences from outside of themselves. The mere lapse of time will not arouse them, nor will warmth and sunshine alone set them free from the thrall which binds them. When seeds are planted by the farmer or gardener in spring, they are also supplied with soil and water. Then some kinds begin to sprout (*germinate*) at once; others will not do so unless several months or even seasons have passed since they fell from the parent plant.

Let us try an experiment by which we may learn what agencies stimulate the dormant seed into visible action. Take several flower-pot saucers or plates and place on each two circular pieces of clean porous paper or loose woollen cloths, soaked in water. Scatter a number of seeds of each kind between the wet cloths or papers, putting last year's seeds and those of this year in separate plates or saucers carefully labelled. Cover the dishes with others inverted over them. Set the dishes in a warm place, and look at the seeds every day to see whether they are sprouting or not.

Although the potato is a flowering plant, it is not usually grown from seeds, but from the tubers or "potatoes," as they are called. It will be interesting for you to try whether the potato tuber of this year will grow this autumn or not. So plant two or three tubers in good soil, in flower-pots or in a box, and keep them warm and moist.

#### EXERCISES

1. What percentage of the different kinds of seeds and of the tubers sprouted?
2. How did the seeds of this year compare with those of last year in germinating power?
3. Which of the several kinds of seeds germinated first, second, third, and so on?
4. What parts—*organs* as they are called—may be seen in the little plants when they first emerge from the seed-case?



5. Note whether the young plants grow at one end or at both ends, and what new parts appear as they continue to grow ; especially notice the delicate little hairs—finer than the finest rootlets—which form on the roots, and observe whether they are produced at the tip of the root or rootlets, and how far back they extend. These are the root-hairs. What is their color? Are they branched or simple?

6. Keep the young plants supplied with water for some time longer, to find out how long they will grow without soil, and what new parts will appear.

---

## II. THE ORGANS OF VEGETATION

*Material.*—The dishes used in the preceding lesson, with the young plants therein ; fresh green leaves—some thick and tough, some soft and tender ; small saucers or nappies for holding alcohol ; test tubes and spirit lamps (or, instead, enamelled cups and a stove).

We shall now examine the leaf to learn something of its structure and of the materials which make it up. By scraping the upper side of the leaf carefully with a sharp knife-blade, you will be able to raise a little piece of the *skin* ; then scrape through to the lower skin. Decide whether the whole leaf is covered above and below by this thin skin, whether the skin is colored, and whether it will allow light to pass through it. By holding between you and the window a leaf which has been scraped through in places to the upper skin, you will find whether the skin is transparent or not. Of course unless the light can pass through the

skin, none of the sunlight which falls upon the leaf can enter its interior.

Take out one of the larger veins of the leaf, scrape it clean; note its color; find whether it is more or less brittle than the material around it, and whether it can be split lengthwise or not. The veins are fibrous woody bundles, forming a framework to support the delicate green substance which occupies the most of the space between the upper and the lower skin. They are, in addition, the paths along which food materials and foods pass.

Between the veins, occupying the space between the skin on the upper side and the skin on the lower side, there must be some other kind of material which gives the leaf most of its thickness. Examine this material by rubbing and squeezing the leaf between your fingers. This juicy part of the leaf may be called the *pulp*.

Boil a fresh green leaf in water, and note the change, if any, in the apparent color of the water and of the leaf. Place the boiled leaf and an unboiled one in hot alcohol or methylated spirits and leave them there until you observe a decided change in the color of the leaves, and in the apparent color of the alcohol. In heating the alcohol, be careful not to set it on fire. The green coloring matter which you have wholly or partly extracted from the leaf is called *leaf-green*. You will find out its use later.



## EXERCISES

1. How does the soft green part of the leaf differ from the skin and the veins?
  2. In which of these three—skin, woody tissue and pulp—is most of the sap contained? most of the leaf-green?
  3. Find out what liquid the sap mostly consists.
  4. Press a *small* bit of litmus paper into the sap of a leaf. Describe and explain the effect.
  5. Which of the three kinds of material found in the blade of the leaf is most abundant in the leaf-stalk?
  6. Make a collection of leaves which have been partially eaten by insects. Try to find some in which the pulp alone has been eaten by a leaf-mining caterpillar, living and working between the skin on the upper side of the blade and the skin on the lower side.
  7. Make drawings of the leaves of some common trees.
  8. Collect a number of different caterpillars, and place each of them in a wide-mouthed bottle with a little sand or loose soil in the bottom. Keep them supplied with fresh leaves from their food-plants, and watch their behavior.
- 

III. ORGANS OF VEGETATION (*continued*)

*Material.*—A collection of cuttings from various stems and roots, including enough pieces of sunflower stalks and corn-stalks to supply the whole class.

You will to-day examine some stems or branches young and old, large and small, soft and hard, to find whether they are made up of the same or of different kinds of material from the leaf. At the

same time you will compare the structure of the stem with that of the root. You will need to cut the stems off crosswise, and then split the pieces lengthwise several times, testing them in various ways as you proceed, to determine the several different materials of which the stems and roots are composed.

You will find whether stems and roots and their branches are ever protected merely by a thin skin as leaves are, and whether they always retain this thin skin. If not, find when and in what cases it disappears, and what structure takes its place.

In plants like the sunflower and in common trees and shrubs, the parts of the stem and of the root are arranged in concentric circles about the *pith* or soft substance in the middle. The comparatively hard material which surrounds the pith is called *wood*. Outside of this is the *bark*, a mixture of delicate material and tough fibres. Sometimes these are so firm and long that, as in the case of the flax, they may be used to make thread and cloth. Stems which have a central pith with wood next and bark on the outside are often called *exogenous* stems, because they grow in thickness by forming a new layer of wood outside the old wood every year. At the same time, new bark is formed inside the old. Nevertheless the bark does not become very thick. As most stems grow older, cork arises a little below the surface, cutting off the



water and food supply from the outer parts, which die and fall away, usually in flakes. From the birch, the waterproof corky layers may be peeled off in great sheets which are used to make canoes. The thick cork of an oak found in Southern Europe is of great commercial value and the source of most of our bottle-stoppers.

Upon examination of a stalk of Indian Corn, you will find a different arrangement. The woody bundles run through the stem scattered in every part but more closely packed towards the margin of the stem. There is no central pith marked off from the wood and no true bark. Such stems as these are called *endogenous* stems. They add no new layers of wood to the old, and do not increase very much in thickness as time goes on. Even the great palms of tropical and semi-tropical countries grow but little in diameter after the first two years of their life, and may in time decrease slightly because of the death and peeling away of the outer part of the stem.

The largest plant with an endogenous stem grown in Canada is the Indian corn. Its near relatives, the grasses, as well as the lilies, the orchids and the irises are other familiar examples.

#### EXERCISES

1. Arrange the stems you have been using into two lots, one of exogenous, the other of endogenous stems.

2. Mention some stems which show by their color that the bark contains leaf-green.

3. When you squeeze the stem of a red clover between your thumb and forefinger it is seen to be a stiff, hollow cylinder which yields to the pressure and flattens out, but when the pressure is removed springs back again. Determine whether the clover-stalk is exogenous or endogenous.

4. Find a stem which contains but one ring or layer of wood between the bark and the pith, and another in which the wood is made up of several layers. Account for this difference.

5. Mention several plants whose stems never have more than one layer of wood. Why is this?

6. Find a stem which shows, in cross-section, radiating lines extending from the pith through the wood. These are called the *pith rays*. They are not really lines, but merely appear as lines when they are cut across. By means of longitudinal section, find what their form is.

7. Examine the stalks of the common grains, and find whether their structure is like that of the sunflower-stalk or that of the corn-stalk.

8. Show which have more surface in proportion to the bulk and weight of material in them—leaves or stems.

9. What are some of the uses of leaves, roots, stems, bark and wood?

10. Gather in a damp place some fallen leaves, one or more years old, and find what part of the leaf is the first to decay, and what parts remain to the last.

11. (a) Make a drawing of a cross-section of a stem of a sunflower, showing the pith, wood and bark, and the relative amount of each.

(b) Make a similar drawing of a stem which contains several rings or layers of wood.

(c) Draw a cross-section of a corn-stalk, showing its structure.



#### IV. THE ORGANS OF REPRODUCTION IN FLOWERING PLANTS

*Material.*—A set of flowers for each student, illustrating common variations in floral structure. Needles stuck through small corks for handles will be found very useful in examining flowers.

You have all observed that after a seed-plant—a plant which produces seed—has grown for a time it produces flowers. I suppose you have examined flowers before and know the names of their parts. As a review, arrange before you a set of flowers showing as many variations of structure as possible; compare them with each other, and find examples of the different parts and structural features mentioned in the following description:—

The lowest or outermost part of a complete flower is called the *calyx*, and is made up of a circle or set of *sepals*, which may be either quite separate from each other or united at the base into a deep or flat *tube*, with teeth or lobes at the top.

Inside the calyx is the *corolla*, usually more delicate than the calyx and of some other color than green. It may be composed of separate petals, or may be in the form of a cup or tube with a toothed or lobed margin.

*Stamens* stand inside the corolla. A stamen is usually made up of a slender stalk called a *filament* and an *anther* borne on the filament. The filament

may be very short or absent, the anther being the essential part of the stamen. Find how many little cavities—*pollen-sacs*—there are in the anther of a stamen. Look for some anthers which have not, and some which have, discharged the fine powder (*pollen*) from the sacs. Note where the anther-lobes open to discharge pollen.

In the centre of the flower, you will find one or more pistils containing ovules which will later become seeds. A pistil may be composed of several parts called carpels, or it may be made up of one only. In the buttercup you will see many carpels quite separate from each other and so small and seed-like in form that people are apt to take them for seeds; but if you succeed in opening one of them without destroying the seed you will find that each carpel *contains* a single buttercup seed. So each buttercup carpel is not a seed but a seed-like *fruit*, bearing within it one seed. In some plants, for example the poppy or the apple, the pistil is composed of several carpels, closely united. The number of carpels can usually be told by the number of parts into which the pistil is divided at the top, or the number of little chambers holding seeds in the lower part of the pistil, called the *ovary*.

The pollen formed in the anthers of the stamens is generally necessary for the production of good seeds in the pistil. You can feel a sticky surface



at the top of the pistil in a newly-opened flower and may succeed in seeing grains of pollen upon it. In flowers in which the carpels of the pistil are separate, or partly so, each carpel has a sticky surface (*stigma*) at the top, to which the pollen grains adhere. It is a common mistake to think that the pollen grain itself goes down through the pistil and causes the seeds to develop. The fact is—as can be seen with a microscope—that the pollen grain remains on the stigma, and a long slender tube, called the *pollen tube*, grows out of the little grain of pollen down through the pistil to the *ovule*. This tube conveys a tiny male cell formed in the pollen grain to a little egg inside the ovule which is thus fertilized. Then the egg grows into a baby plant called the *embryo* and the ovule becomes a seed. When this does not happen, perfect seeds that will germinate and produce new plants are as a rule not formed in the pistil.

#### EXERCISES

1. Find a flower whose parts are in sets of five or of twice five.
2. Find a flower in which the number of carpels is the same as the number of sepals, and one in which the number is different.
3. Look for other numerical differences in the parts of a flower.
4. Look for cases in which *like* parts of the flower seem more or less united, either at the base or at the top.

5. Find examples of the union of *unlike* parts, as when the calyx-tube seems to adhere to the ovary or seed-vessel of the pistil, or when the stamens or petals seem to be "inserted on" or grow out of the calyx-tube.

6. Study flowers in the garden or fields, and find some which are frequently visited by insects. Discover if you can what the insects get from the flowers and how they get it. Find if insects are attracted to flowers from a distance, and by what means.

7. Gather some of the stuff which the insects are taking from the flowers and examine it.

8. Make drawings of several flowers, and of the several parts of a complete flower.

---

## V. ORGANS OF REPRODUCTION (*continued*)

*Material.*—A set of flowers and fruits, illustrating the relation between the two.

If you will compare some fresh flowers with older ones of the same kind, you will find that some parts of the flower fade and wither, while the pistil not only remains fresh and healthy, but actually keeps on growing till it is much larger than it was before the petals and stamens began to wither and dry up. After a while the pistil, too, ceases to grow. This enlarged ripened pistil is a *fruit*.

Sometimes other parts of the flower combine with the pistil to make the fruit. For example, the part of the apple outside the core is largely the fleshy flower-stalk.



The carpels of which the pistil was composed may usually be counted in the fruit. Sometimes, as in the lily, they show on the outside of the fruit. In other cases, as in the apple, they show only in the interior.

A great many fruits are small and dry and resemble seeds so much that they are called seeds by gardeners and farmers. Each of these little fruits *contains* a seed enclosed by one carpel or more, but the fruit is sown with the seed inside.

In many fruits the carpels open and discharge the seeds. The pod of a pea is such a fruit. When small it was the pistil of the flower. It is composed of one closed carpel containing a row of seeds. It grew on the top of the flower-stalk with the other parts of the flower around it. Try to find it in sweet pea blossom.

Other fruits, like a grain of wheat or a currant, never split to free the seed.

In order that as many plants as possible may find healthy, comfortable homes without crowding one another, seeds should be widely scattered.

There are many interesting contrivances which bring this about. Some seeds and fruits can float long distances upon the water; cocoanuts have been carried a thousand miles in this way.

The wind bears others on their journeys. "Maple-keys," milkweed seeds, dandelion fruits with silken sails are familiar examples. "Tumble-

weeds," like the Russian thistle, roll long distances before the wind, scattering seeds as they go.

Every time you go for a country walk in the fall you are apt to help in the work of carrying baby plants far from their mothers. Clinging to your clothes there will almost surely be burrs, beggar ticks and many of their relatives.

Bright, fleshy fruits attract birds and other animals. But while the fruits are crushed, the seeds generally pass through the digestive tracts of animals uninjured, and may germinate even more easily after such treatment.

Other fruits, like those of the witch-hazel and the wild geranium, burst when dry and hurl the seeds some distance away.

So by one means or another, seeds become widely scattered and if they lodge in a favorable spot give rise to new plants which will have good chances of living and bearing seed in their turn.

#### EXERCISES

1. Why are the flower, fruit and seed called organs of reproduction?

2. Find fruits which were formed from the pistil of the flower only, and others which include other parts as well.

3. Mention some so-called seeds which are really fruits. Give proofs.

4. Make a small collection of seeds and seed-like fruits which are dispersed by the wind.



5. Make another collection of seeds which are adapted for being carried about by animals for dispersal.

6. How does the juicy pulp of many fruits aid in the dispersal of their seeds?

7. Find a plant which blooms during the first year of its life; one which does not bloom the first year but blooms the second year; and one which does not produce flowers till it is more than two years old.

---

## VI. INSECTS AND THEIR RELATION TO PLANT LIFE

*Material.*—A set of specimens—living, dead or dormant—put up in bottles or jars, illustrating stages in the life-history of insects.

The majority of insects are not only beautiful, but they lead clean and healthy lives. Perhaps of all insects, bees and butterflies commend themselves most to your kindly feelings—the former on account of the honey they produce, and which we enjoy, and the latter by their pretty colors and graceful flight. When you come to know more about other insects and their ways I am sure that you will find them so interesting that you will wish to study their lives and will lose any foolish prejudices which you may now have in regard to them.

The life-history of an insect is a wonderful story and very surprising to one who follows it for the first time. It includes four stages—the egg, the larva, the pupa, and the imago or adult insect.



### THE MOURNING-CLOAK.

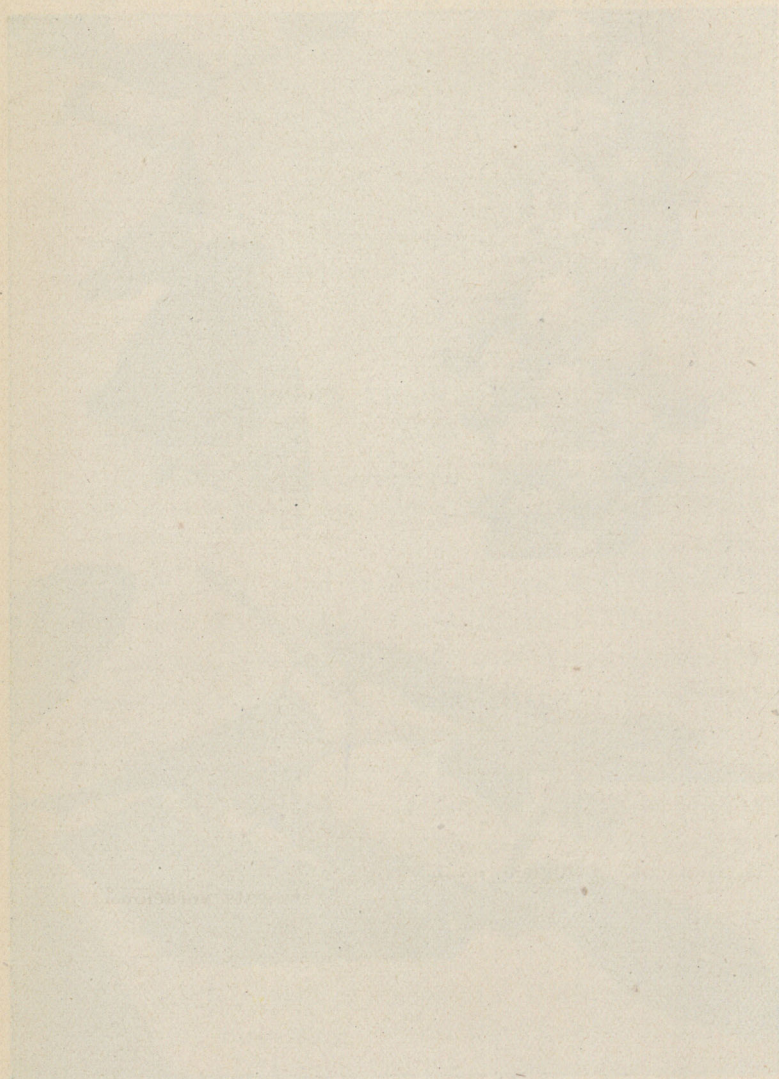
1. Eggs greatly enlarged.

2. Full-grown larvæ.

3. Butterfly just out of the chrysalis skin.

From "How to Know the Butterflies."—COMSTOCK. (*Reproduced by permission.*)





I hope you may have secured specimens of these forms for this lesson. The eggs, usually about as large as pin-heads, may often be found glued in close clusters to branches or leaves. Caterpillars (larvae), hairy or smooth, may be found feeding on leaves or crawling on the ground, and may be brought in small jars or boxes to the school. Pupae may be discovered suspended from branches, boards, or other supports, or enclosed in cocoons.

The final stage of an insect's life—usually winged—is called the imago. If the imagos of bees or butterflies cannot be obtained, those of flies will answer the purpose. The complete life-history of an insect may be summarised as follows:—

1. The *egg*. This stage is dormant and motionless and remains so until the next form—the larva—hatches out of it.

2. The *larva*. The larvae of the great groups of insects differ much in appearance, and receive different names. The larvae of butterflies and moths are called *caterpillars* and may be smooth or hairy. The larvae of flies are called *maggots*; those of beetles are *grubs*. Larvae, no matter how worm-like, should not be called worms, for worms never develop into a higher form as larvae do. In the larval stage the insect is active, crawls about, eats voraciously leaves, fruit, wood, decaying matter, or other insects, according to its taste, and grows so rapidly that it bursts its skin and casts it off (*moults*), sometimes ten times before it attains its full size. When its appetite subsides, the larva may construct around itself a small bag or loose case called a *cocoon*. The cocoon is often composed mainly of its own hair, sometimes of silk drawn from its body, sometimes of



earth or bits of wood stuck together. When the cocoon is completed the larva turns into a pupa. Some larvae, instead of making a cocoon, suspend themselves from a support and are transformed into a pupa, the outside of their bodies becoming hard and dry, to form a protective case.

3. The *pupa*. In this third stage the insect is usually dormant and inactive. Many insects pass the winter as pupae. As we have seen, the pupa is commonly enclosed in a cocoon, from which at last the insect emerges in its adult form—the imago—usually with wings.

4. The *imago*. This is the final form of the insect. It is active and often able to fly with great rapidity, and for long distances. Most insects in this stage eat or drink, but they do not grow. You may often see them flying from flower to flower sipping nectar, and sometimes collecting pollen. Judging from their gay manners one would think that this is the happiest part of the insect's life, but it is the stage which ends in death. Before it dies, however, the insect deposits its eggs on or near the food-plants or food-material of its larva. In some insects, such as grasshoppers, the distinction between the larva and the pupa is not clearly marked, and the pupa is active and similar to the adult in form.

Insects do an immense amount of damage by devouring the leaves of our cultivated plants and forest trees. They often live in fruits, and even in the stems of trees, gnawing passages through the wood. Some species suck the juice out of leaves and tender stems. Mosquitoes and house-flies spread sickness and death by conveying the germs of disease and depositing them on or in our bodies or our food. Although we have discovered various methods of keeping destructive and noxious insects in check, they still continue to put us to great

trouble and loss. Indeed the damage done throughout the country may be reckoned in millions of dollars every year.

Still we should remember that insects do a great deal of good. They pollinate the flowers of our fruit trees and vegetables, thus insuring the production of seed. Some kinds act as scavengers, devouring foul and decaying matter; others—the lady-beetles for instance—benefit us by eating the insects which feed upon our crops. The “little busy bee” is our unconscious benefactor, since we regularly rob it of its stores of honey.

#### EXERCISES

1. Collect some caterpillars and put them with leaves from their food-plants, in fruit jars, wide-mouthed bottles or boxes with the front made of glass and the back of wire netting. If you use jars, the mouths may be covered with thin cotton cloth fastened on with a rubber band or a string. Put an inch or two of sand or loose earth in the bottom of the jars or boxes. Supply the caterpillars with fresh leaves until they begin to prepare to pupate (turn into pupae). If you get an opportunity, watch the process of cocoon-making.

2. After the caterpillars have transformed into pupae, set the jars or boxes away in a cool place, to await the coming of spring.

3. Examine the external structure of an insect in the imago state. Note the three principal divisions of its body, and that these divisions are made up of short joints or segments. Count its wings, legs, feelers and eyes.

4. Find an insect which bites off and chews its food, and another which does not chew, but *sucks* the juice of plants. Watch the processes of chewing and sucking.

5. Make a sketch from life of an adult insect with wings.



## VII. HOW TREES AND SHRUBS PREPARE FOR WINTER AND SPRING

*Material.*—A set of branches from different species of trees, including some fruit trees.

How easily the leaves break off from the branches and shrubs at this season of the year. They may be seen fluttering down to the ground on calm days when not the slightest breeze disturbs them. Their own weight is sufficient to break them off. Carefully pull off some leaves still clinging to the branch, and find at what place the leaf-stalk breaks. Then test it to see whether it is as easily broken anywhere else. It is evident that this brittle layer across the leaf-stalk must form towards the autumn, for if it had been present in summer the leaves would all have fallen off then. So most of our trees and shrubs act as if they deliberately planned to get rid of their leaves in the autumn. Why should they? It must be of some advantage to the trees to be leafless in winter. Whatever the work of leaves may be, it must be impossible for them to continue it during the cold season.

Look for the marks left by last year's leaves when they fell. These marks are called *leaf-scars*. Compare them with the leaf-scars of this year. What do you find close above the leaves or leaf-scars of this year? These little knobs are the

winter buds; but there are no buds above last year's leaf-scars in many cases. Instead, there is usually a branch. Since this year's leaves have buds above them, it is clear that last year's leaves had buds above them last autumn. But the buds of last year have since grown out into branches. It seems then that each *side-bud* develops, not into a leaf as some imagine, but into a whole branch bearing several leaves. Even after the leaves have fallen, the number of leaves which came from one bud can be determined by counting the leaf-scars on the branch which bore them. It will be interesting to dissect one of the larger buds with a needle to see whether its structure affords any proof that the bud would become a branch bearing a number of leaves.

Covering the delicate parts of the bud within, you often find dry scales overlapping each other, whose use is evidently to protect the undeveloped branch. These *bud-scales* may be regarded as another form of leaves, for they grow on the same stem upon which the foliage-leaves grew, and are more or less leaf-like in form. When the bud-scales fall off in spring, they leave little curved scars to mark their places. These sets of bud-scale scars mark the place of last year's buds; and the position of the buds of earlier years may often be determined by their means.



Let me next call your attention to the *end-buds* (terminal buds) which you find at the top of the branches and branchlets which have grown from side-buds. By studying your branches you will be able to locate the points where the terminal buds of last year and of several preceding years grew. When you have found the position of last year's terminal bud, you will see at once how much the branch has increased in length since last winter. In many branches you can find how much the branch extended its length during each of several preceding years. Find in which of these years the branch grew most rapidly.

The buds which we have been discussing are called *leaf-buds*. Each of them develops into a branch (or a continuation of one) bearing foliage-leaves. In addition to the leaf-buds, trees prepare *flower-buds*, which develop into short branches bearing flowers. Find some of these flower-buds. How strange it seems that the trees and shrubs prepare for the approaching winter with its frost and snow, and for the genial spring to succeed the winter!

Each tree not only forms miniature branches, covered them with waterproof bud-scales, ready to start into activity and growth as soon as the spring sun arouses them, but it stores up food in the branch near the buds to nourish the developing buds during their early growth.

There is a notion that the scales which cover buds keep them warm in winter. It is impossible that such thin coverings could be effective in that way during our severe winters. It seems that the chief use of the scales as well as of the resinous substances which sometimes stick bud-scales together, is to keep the buds from drying up during the dormant season.

### EXERCISES

1. Compare leaves that have fallen from the trees with some fresh leaves from other plants. What differences do you observe?

2. Find whether stems which die before winter comes—that is annual stems—have any buds; and if you find such buds, compare them with those of plants whose stems live through the winter.

3. Try whether you could tell the different trees and shrubs apart by the shapes of their leaves, and, after the leaves have fallen, by their leaf-scars and buds. Make a collection of leaves and twigs from the common trees.

4. Make a drawing of a short branch, showing the buds and leaf-scars.

5. Look for examples of other plants besides trees and shrubs, which make preparations for spring by storing up food or in other ways.

6. What relation can you discover between the arrangement of the leaves and that of the buds and branches?

7. Find, by cutting a branch off in several places, how many rings or layers of wood there are in the segment which grew this year from last year's terminal bud; how many in the part which grew out last year; and in the part which has been growing for three seasons. In the last case, show which is the oldest and which the newest layer.



### VIII. OTHER SEASONAL CHANGES IN AUTUMN

The trees and shrubs—plants whose stems persist and continue to increase in height and diameter year after year—make preparations every autumn, as we have seen, in order that they may the better endure the rigors of winter and make a quick start in the spring; but there are many perennial plants whose stems die down to the ground every autumn, and are replaced by new stems with new leaves in the spring. Such plants as these lay up a store of food in underground parts, which, though the soil may be frozen hard about it, remain alive but dormant throughout the winter. Some of these, the dandelion for example, pack away a supply of food in their roots; some, like the onion, in a close cluster of fleshy leaves called a *bulb*; while the potato and others develop underground stems, either tubers or root-stocks which they use as storage organs.

Annual plants, such as wheat, which only live one year, store up food in their seed to nourish the young plants of the next generation. The parent wheat plants, apparently exhausted by the effort to provide for their offspring, then wither away and die outright early in the autumn. So when we eat onions, potatoes or wheat bread, we are regaling ourselves on the food which the plants stored up for themselves or for their successors.

The great majority of our birds are gifted with some kind of foresight which often warns them, while the days are fine and warm, that a season which they have never seen is approaching, when it would be difficult or impossible for them to keep warm and find enough food to sustain them. Gradually, we know not the day or the hour, each species departs for the sunny south.

If you are fortunate enough to be lovers of birds and bird songs you will feel the solitude and silence which slowly takes possession of the fields, groves and forests as the feathered tribes depart and leave no mementoes save their empty nests. Our regret is softened by a certain hope that the birds, having braved all the dangers of the journey, will return in the spring-time in a happy and tuneful mood.

Many will not have very far to travel, as they only go a few degrees to the south, but others keep on southward until they reach Mexico or Central America, or, crossing the Caribbean Sea, enter South America. The bobolinks are said to cross the equator and not to stay their flight until they reach southern Brazil, thousands of miles from the cosy homes where they first saw the light.

A few of the birds remain with us throughout the year. You will see them sometimes in the winter, and you may have an opportunity to help



them through by throwing them crumbs from your table.

The insect tribes, as well, have learned to prepare for winter. You have all noticed how scarce insects seem to be in the cold season. There is no hum of bee, no buzzing of mosquitoes in the houses, only an occasional house-fly is seen on a warm day. This great stillness in the insect world does not mean that the insects have migrated like the birds to a more genial climate. They are only dormant, and the various resting-places in which they pass the winter are not hard to find. In late autumn, hidden away in crevices, or under stones, suspended from boards or rails, glued to branches or leaves, hidden in moss or buried in the earth, usually as eggs, but sometimes in the caterpillar or the winged state, they await the great awakening.

The various wild creatures of field, forest and stream have solved the problem of winter existence in different ways, each forming habits in accordance with its own capabilities.

While all these preparations are being made throughout the animated world, the shortening days, the falling temperature and even the position in the heavens of the sun, moon, planets and conspicuous constellations mark the slow but steady approach of winter.

## EXERCISES

1. Find some plants, cultivated or wild, whose stems die down in the autumn, while their roots, underground stems and buds remain dormant, ready to start in the spring. Find where their food is stored.

2. Examine specimens of garden plants which store up food in their roots before they blossom in the same or the following year.

3. Observe as far as you have opportunity, the order of departure of the common migratory birds.

4. Measure your shadow or that of some fixed object once a month at the same hour of the day until the end of the year. How much does the length of the shadow change in three months' time? Account for this change.

5. Record the length of time from sunrise to sunset once a month during the last four months of the year. Explain the change in the duration of daylight.

6. Record once a week during the same months the outdoor temperature as indicated by the thermometer. Take the temperature always at the same hour of the day. State the amount of variation and explain.

---

IX. SOME IDEAS ABOUT MATTER

*Material.*—A pail of water, glass jars or bottles, test tubes or enamelled cups, spirit lamps, a small vial, a tumbler, a little aqua ammoniae (ammonia in water), sugar and salt.

All boys and girls of your age have noticed that wood, iron, water, milk and other things, take up room, or in other words, *occupy space*. We apply the term *matter* to anything that will occupy space.



It may never have occurred to you that there are things which are quite invisible to us which occupy space as completely as those forms of matter which we can see. Let us consider the air in what we call an *empty* bottle. Push the open bottle, mouth downward, into a vessel of water. You will find that the water does not enter the open mouth of the bottle and fill the bottle when you push it down beneath the surface of the water. If you push the bottle under water and incline it on its side, you can see the bubbles of air coming out of the bottle, and as the air goes out the water rushes in, but not before. The air occupies space, for it excludes the water from the bottle; so air is a kind of matter.

A portion of matter of sensible size is called a *body*. The amount of space included within the limits of a body is called its *volume*. A body does not necessarily fill all the space included within its limits; for instance, sand and gravel do not. The volumes of bodies are expressed in various units, such as cubic inches, cubic centimeters, gallons and bushels.

The different *kinds* of matter are called *substances*. For example, wood, water and air are substances. A substance such as wood, which is so firm or rigid that it will not flow, is called a *solid*. Substances which will flow readily, like water and air, are called *fluids*. You have noticed

that if you leave some water in a corked bottle, the volume of water remains the same. The water lies in the bottom of the bottle; but if you catch some invisible ammonia in a small open vial and set it in a large bottle, and cork the larger bottle, you will find in a short time, by the smell, that the ammonia has spread throughout the larger bottle. The ammonia does not tend, as the water does, to retain its volume, but tends to increase in volume, and spread throughout all the available space. A fluid such as water, which tends to hold together and retain its volume, is called a *liquid*. Fluids such as ammonia and air, which tend to diffuse through space and become thinner and thinner, are called *gases*.

Many substances may exist either as a solid, a liquid or a gas. Water is one. In the form of ice it is a solid; when the ice melts it is liquid water; as invisible steam it is a gas. The visible water vapor which we see issuing from a boiler or a kettle is not steam. True steam or gaseous water is invisible. If you watch visible vapor forming at the mouth of a kettle, or at the mouth of a test tube in which water is boiling, you will see that the visible vapor is formed from an invisible gas. This invisible gaseous water is the true steam. Leave some water in a tumbler in the room. The water gradually escapes from the tumbler and leaves no trace behind. It has diffused



through the air; but it was not as a liquid that the water escaped from the tumbler, else you could have seen it going. The liquid water changed into invisible gas (steam), and it was the gas which spread through the air of the room. We say that the water evaporated.

Put about half a teaspoonful of sugar into a cup of water, and as much salt into another cup of water. If the sugar and salt do not disappear entirely in a short time, gradually add water until they do. Although you cannot see the sugar or the salt now, you can taste them in the water. They seem to be in a liquid state, like the water itself, and so cannot be distinguished by sight from the water. The sugar and salt are said to be *dissolved* in the water, and the two mixtures are called *solutions*—one a solution of salt, the other a solution of sugar in water. Boil some of each solution in a test tube, and catch the escaping vapor in a cold bottle. Taste the condensed vapor and the substance left behind in the test tube. The liquid you collect in the bottle is *distilled water*. You now see how to separate a dissolved solid from the liquid in which it was dissolved.

#### EXERCISES

1. Find several solid substances which will not dissolve to any perceptible extent in water.
2. Set a clear solution of salt and one of sugar aside in a

corked bottle, till you have decided whether the salt and the sugar will become solid again and settle to the bottom of the water. Then leave the bottle open till the water evaporates, and examine the dry residue.

3. Find a solid, other than ice, which will become a liquid when heated, and another solid which cannot be fused (liquefied by heat).

4. Find the volume of a rectangular box 12 in. long, 8 in. wide and 5 in. deep. Explain the process.

5. What volume of sand would the before-mentioned box hold, supposing the box to be made of material  $\frac{1}{2}$  in. thick?

6. (a) Give reasons for thinking that air has weight.

(b) What do you think is the cause of weight?

---

## X. SOMETHING ABOUT WORK AND ENERGY

*Material.*—Spirit lamps, a piece of coarse iron wire, a vulcanite (hard rubber) comb, a piece of woollen cloth, silk thread, balls of dry sunflower pith, small thin pieces of various metals, and light pieces of several other substances, slender sewing needles, small pieces of cork, earthen bowls or saucers filled with water, and a good horse-shoe magnet.

In order to do work we must move some material body, or cause one that is moving to go faster or more slowly, or in a different direction. So you see, you are really working when you are playing, for you are moving things.

All of you have had the experience of working or playing till you felt tired. Now, I think you will admit that when you feel tired you really feel



as if you had lost something—that you have less of something than you had before. That which you lost in consequence of working is called energy. *Energy is the ability to do work*, and you lost some of that ability. However, you will get a fresh supply to make up for what you have lost.

You must have observed that the amount of energy a body has does not depend on its size or the quantity of matter in it. Apparently an ounce of gunpowder has more energy than a pound of clay. Certainly a hot piece of iron has more energy than the same piece when it is cold, for it can do work when hot which it cannot do when cold. For instance, it could burn a hole in a board. When it is doing that it is doing work, for it is moving the parts of the wood. If you lay a hot piece of iron on a cold piece the cold piece becomes warmer—rises in temperature. This is a case in which energy is transferred from one body to another, for the energy of the hot piece becomes less, while the energy of the other becomes greater.

Hang up balls of dry sunflower pith and some light pieces of metal and other substances by threads of silk. Try whether a hard rubber comb will have any visible effect on them when held near without touching them. Then rub the comb vigorously with a piece of flannel and hold it

near the suspended objects one after the other. The flannel and comb should be warm and dry in order to get the best results. You will find the comb will do work after being rubbed that it could not do before—that is, it gained energy while you were rubbing it. You lost muscular energy in rubbing the comb, but of course the comb did not gain muscular energy, for it has no muscles. The energy acquired by the comb is called *electric energy*.

This experiment illustrates another case of transference of energy; but the energy was transformed as well as transferred.

You will find that a magnet will not act on all substances which the electrified comb acts upon; it has another form of energy—*magnetic energy*.

You all know that heat may be transformed into light and light into heat. Later you will learn how green plants store up energy obtained from sunlight. So, the coal derived from forests which flourished long ages ago, contains a great quantity of imprisoned energy. When coal is burned, this energy is set free in the form of heat, which warms our houses, changes water into the steam used to drive great engines and is, in short, the source of the energy used in practically all of our manufactories.

When you heated the iron you were imparting



*heat energy* to it. The iron weighs no more when it is hot than when cold. The heat increases its energy, but not its weight. The comb, too, when electrified, has more energy than before, but you will find that it weighs no more. Matter has weight, but energy has no weight.

In fact, we are now sure that energy is motion. Heat, light, electric and magnetic action are all waves in something called *the ether* which must fill all space, extending beyond even the most distant stars. Through it, heat and light travel more than 90,000,000 of miles from the sun to the earth. We cannot detect the presence of the ether by our senses, but we perceive the vibrations which pass freely through it and call them by different names. But the differences between heat, light, the electric waves used in wireless telegraphy and those invisible waves which are especially active in bringing about chemical changes, seem to be only those of wave length. Those used by a wireless telegraphy apparatus are miles long. The longest heat waves which have been measured are only a little over one five-hundredth of an inch in length. These ether waves are transverse waves, that is they resemble those made on the surface of water by throwing a stone into it. The water moves up and down nearly at right angles to the surface, although the waves themselves move along the surface.

## EXERCISES

1. Try to electrify other bodies besides the comb.
2. Find by experiment whether electrical energy will pass from one body to another without being transformed.
3. Find what substances are attractable by the magnet, and some which are not.
4. Rub your knife-blade with a magnet and hold the knife near a needle. Explain the result.
5. Rub a steel needle with one end (*pole*) of the magnet several times in one direction. Stick the needle through a small piece of cork and float it evenly on a dish of water placed in such a position that the action of the needle will not be affected by objects made of iron or steel. Note the direction in which the floating needle comes to rest on the water. Swing it half way around and let it go again. How does it act? You have just made a simple form of the mariner's compass. Point out its use.



## WINTER LESSONS

### XI. CONTENTS OF THE POTATO TUBER

*Material.*—Potato tubers for the class, test tubes, spirit lamps, iodine solution (obtainable from a druggist) may be diluted with methylated spirit, thin white cotton cloth (cheese cloth) in square pieces, saucers or glass nappies. If test tubes are not available, the potato juice may be heated and water boiled in enamelled cups.

WE noted in a preceding lesson that the storage of food for future use was a common habit among plants. It is now in order for us to examine some storage organs to find the principal substances they contain. We will begin with the potato tuber, commonly called a "potato."

Before we proceed to search for the principal substances of which a potato tuber is composed, note the arrangement of the buds called the "eyes" of the potato. Cut the tuber in two, crosswise, and find the parts corresponding to the pith, wood and bark of an ordinary stem. Although the lines marking off these three divisions may be seen, you will find the materials in them very different from those of the corresponding parts in the stem of a tree.

You will notice that the interior of the tuber

is quite wet with a watery liquid, which you can identify by its taste and lack of color to be mostly water. Try the effect of pure water and then of vinegar on litmus paper. Now press a piece of blue litmus paper into the watery juice of the potato. What change of color do you observe? The change in color plainly indicates that the juice is not pure water, but has some substance dissolved in it. The change you observed is characteristic of substances called acids, and indicates the presence of an *acid* in the potato juice.

Reduce half of a potato to a fine pulpy mass, by scraping it with a knife or a grater. Place the pulp in the middle of a piece of thin, bleached cotton cloth (cheese cloth). Gather the cloth up into the shape of a bag, and squeeze the juice out into a dish. Add a *little* water—not as much water as juice—and wet the pulp from time to time by pressing the cloth into the juice and water in the dish. By repeated wetting and squeezing you will get out of the pulp nearly everything that will pass through the meshes between the threads of the cloth.

On examining the contents of the dish you will find that some white solid material has passed through the cloth along with the water. Stir this up with the water and juice, and empty everything—solid and liquid—that passed through the cloth into one or more test tubes or into a small bottle,



and let it stand until the solid substance has settled to the bottom.

Then pour off some of the liquid into a test tube. Heat the liquid—but not to the boiling point—until a solid substance forms in the water, and may be seen mixed with or suspended in the water. Allow it to settle. Why could you not see this solid substance before you heated the water? It must have been dissolved in the cold juice, but have become solid when the water was heated. This white substance—which is soluble in cold water, but becomes solid in hot water—is a protein of which white of egg is a simple example. Add a little iodine solution to it and note the effect. Insoluble proteins are also present in the potato in very small amounts.

Next turn your attention to the substance which settled to the bottom of the watery juice at first. Pour the liquid off. Though this sediment is white, it is not a protein. How could it pass through the cloth in a solid state? Try to find this out by examining the sediment. This white substance is called starch. You can tell by the amount you obtained whether it forms a large part of the tuber or not.

Mix a *little* of the starch with an inch of water in a test tube, and boil the water. You will thus find whether the starch will dissolve in hot water or whether it will settle to the bottom as it did at first.

Mix a *very little* of this mixture of starch and water with an inch or two of *cold* water in another test tube, and add a few drops of iodine solution. If you have done the experiment properly you will obtain a beautiful color, very different from that of the iodine itself. This is the iodine test for starch, and will enable you to distinguish starch from other white substances, and to detect it when mixed in very small amount with other substances.

Turn to the material you left in the cloth. Though white it is evidently not starch, else it would have gone through the cloth with the rest of the starch. It differs from the starch in not being made up of grains. This insoluble white substance is called *cellulose*; it is somewhat like the substance already found in wood, but it is not made up of fibres like the woody fibre of leaf veins and of ordinary stems. If you like, you may boil in water a little of the insoluble material left in the cloth, and test it with iodine, to find whether any of the starch remained in the cloth with the cellulose. You will probably find some starch remaining with the cellulose, of which the potato contains a very small amount; although there is enough to keep the tuber in shape after it is peeled, which the loose grains of starch could not do. Besides the cellulose a little fibrous, woody material is present.

It is evident that the skin or peel of the potato



must contain some substance through which water can only pass very slowly, for if you examine an old potato you will find that it is still quite juicy. The tough layer of waterproof material which covers the potato is really cork. This corky layer is similar to that in the bark of a birch tree, and keeps the water in very effectively.

We have now found that there are six different substances in the potato; but do not conclude that there are no other substances in it. Which of the substances in the potato tuber are to be regarded as food stored up for the future use of the potato plant? You could decide this by considering what substances, found in considerable quantity in the tuber, are not found in dry woody stems, or only in small amount. Cut out a narrow strip from the potato, twist a fine iron wire (florist's wire) around it, leaving part of the wire to use as a handle, and heat it in a lamp or other flame. At first it blackens or chars, but after a time a white or gray substance appears outside the black. Press this gray material against a small bit of wet red litmus paper. The paper should change color. A substance which has the observed effect on red litmus is called a base or alkali, and is said to be alkaline. You will notice that the gray substance resembles wood ashes. Try whether wood ashes are alkaline. You will thus find that a potato contains a small amount of *ash*.

## EXERCISES

1. Name the different substances you found in the potato tuber, and tell how to distinguish each from other substances.
  2. Test a boiled potato for starch, simply touching it with weak iodine solution.
  3. Bury a few tubers in the soil out of doors. Mark the spot, and leave them there for the winter to find whether they will survive.
- 

## XII. THE CONTENTS OF A CARROT

*Material.*—Spirit lamps, porous paper (filter paper), Fehling's solution, if procurable, molasses or glucose, iodine solution, several carrots, a small funnel. If your druggist does not keep Fehling's solution in stock, you may get him to prepare some for you, according to the following directions. The quantity may be varied, as long as the proportions here given are observed : Dissolve 14 grams of copper sulphate (blue vitriol) in 200 grams of water, and put this solution (a) into a bottle. Dissolve  $69\frac{1}{2}$  grams of Rochelle salt and 64 grams of caustic potash in 200 grams of water. Keep this solution (b) in another bottle. When these two solutions are mixed in equal volumes you have Fehling's solution. Do not mix the whole at once, as Fehling's solution does not keep very long.

You cannot find any buds on the sides of the carrot as you did on a potato. This indicates that the carrot is a root and not a stem, except at the top where the leaves grow. Leaves never grow on a root, so the top of the carrot must be a very short stem. All the rest of it, since it bears neither leaves nor buds, is of the nature of a root.



Cut a carrot across, and also lengthwise through the middle, and look for the parts corresponding to the pith, wood and bark. You will find little, if any, fibrous wood in the woody region of a carrot of the first year. Note how thick and fleshy is the part which represents the bark, and how small the pith. Observe also the *pith rays* arising from the pith and extending through the wood zone.

Prepare some carrot pulp by scraping a carrot as you did the potato in a former lesson, and squeeze the juice through a fine white cloth. Then test the juice for acid with litmus paper. Note also whether the amount of water is large or small.

Test for a soluble protein by heating the juice in a test tube. If present, it will probably be stained yellow by the substance which colors the carrot.

Test part of the juice, after it cools, for starch with iodine solution.

To remove solid matter, filter some of the juice, *previously heated*, through porous paper. Put into the test tube about an inch of the filtered juice (that is, enough to fill the test tube to the depth of an inch). Add enough Fehling's solution to impart a blue color and heat the mixture. There should soon be a decided change of color in the mixture. Heat a little of Fehling's solution by itself. No change of color should ensue. We can only explain these facts by the supposition that the juice of the carrot contains some sub-

stance which will act on Fehling's solution in the manner observed. Why could we not see this substance in the filtered juice? It must be soluble in water, else we would have seen it. Consider whether it could be starch, a protein or cellulose.

The sweetish taste of the carrot suggests that the substance we have found in the carrot might be sugar. To test this, dissolve a very little molasses or grape sugar (glucose) in an inch of water in a test tube. Add Fehling's solution and apply heat. Sugars such as glucose and others which act in this manner on Fehling's solution are called reducing sugars. The carrot is said to contain more than one kind of sugar, but the principal variety in it is *fruit sugar*. If Fehling's solution is not obtainable, the *taste* test must be accepted as evidence of the presence of sugar.

Examine the residue of the pulp left in the cloth, and decide whether it contains cellulose similar to that of the potato.

#### EXERCISES

1. Name the different substances you found in the carrot, and tell how you distinguish each from the others.
2. Get a carrot with some small roots (secondary roots) branching from the main one. Slice the carrot and find whether the secondary roots start from the pith or from the wood zone.
3. Dissolve a little cane-sugar in water and heat it with Fehling's solution. Does it behave like grape sugar?



4. Test a parsnip, a beet and a turnip for starch and for sugar.

5. Find whether a carrot contains any ash, and if so, whether the ash is acid or alkaline.

6. Plant in flower-pots, or in the garden, when spring comes, a carrot, parsnip, beet and turnip, and note what becomes of the food stored in the roots. When the plants have fully matured, collect and compare their fruits.

---

### XIII. WHAT WE CAN FIND IN A GRAIN OF WHEAT

*Material.*—Wheat grains and flour, saucers or small bowls, pieces of thin white cotton or linen cloth, iodine solution, Fehling's solution.

We shall use ordinary wheat flour in our experiments to-day. Flour is made from wheat grains by grinding and sifting. Of course, whatever we find in the flour must have been in the grain. If you crush a grain of wheat, you can discover why the flour is different in color from the grain.

Make a ball of stiff dough as large as a small apple by mixing wheat flour with water in a dish. Allow the dough to stand half an hour; then put it into a cloth, soak it in a little water in a shallow dish, and squeeze the water through the cloth, repeatedly, into the dish. Then spread the cloth out in another shallow dish, and pour water slowly over the dough, working the dough with your fingers as you proceed. Keep pouring the water off until it becomes quite clear. The part of the

flour left in the cloth will display some properties different from those of anything we found in the potato or the carrot. If you have done this experiment successfully, you will have left in the cloth a substance which will stretch a good deal without breaking, and spring back quickly when you let it go after stretching it. It will also form strings or fibres when you pull one part of it away from the rest. This substance, which is a very valuable part of the wheat grain and flour, is called *gluten*, a mixture of proteins insoluble in water. Dry the gluten and preserve it for a future lesson.

Turn to the white substance which went through the cloth at first with the water. Note whether it dissolved in the water or settled to the bottom. Boil a very little of it in water and apply the iodine test. Decide which exists in greater amount in the wheat flour—gluten or starch.

Since sugar readily dissolves in cold water, you can find by testing the water used in saturating the flour with Fehling's solution, whether the wheat flour contains any appreciable quantity of reducing sugar.

The wheat plant, we find, stores up a generous supply of two substances in its seeds, and that not for itself—for the plant which bears the seed dies as the seed matures—but for its offspring, the young wheat plants, which will grow from these seeds. It was different in the case of the carrot.



The first summer of its life the plant stores up food for its own use the next year. It will then blossom and form seeds with food for the tiny plants in the seeds.

#### EXERCISES

1. Touch a piece of wheat bread with iodine solution, and explain the result.
2. Test Indian corn and other grains for starch, sugar, gluten.
3. Pulverize a bean and test it for starch and for proteins.
4. Germinate wheat grains in a box of earth and observe the early development of the young plants.

---

#### XIV. THE COMPOSITION OF CELLULOSE, WOOD, STARCH AND SUGAR—CHEMICAL UNION.

*Material.*—Some small pieces of wood, cotton wool, starch, sugar, spirit lamps, test tubes with corks.

We have found that a potato contains water, starch, proteins, a little wood, pure cellulose, and some other substances. It will be worth while now to inquire of what the substances which make up the potato are themselves composed.

Let us begin with wood. Hold one end of a piece of dry white wood in the flame of a spirit lamp till it begins to char, that is, till a black substance appears. You will find that this black substance is so soft and easily powdered that you can write on paper with it, and if you put the

stick into water the black substance does not dissolve in the water any more than the wood itself would do. This insoluble black substance is called *charcoal*. It will also be obtained by burning a hard mass of cotton fibre, which is pure cellulose.

The charcoal is plainly a very different substance from wood, and could not be generally used as a substitute for wood. Whence then did the charcoal come? Hold something over the flame to see whether the charcoal came out of the flame. It certainly did not come from the surrounding air, else our faces would become black with charcoal from the air. The charcoal must have been in the wood at first, but one would suppose that if wood contained so much black charcoal, the wood, instead of being white, would be black or nearly so. Why is it that the black charcoal does not show in the white wood? There must be some other substance in the wood which hides the charcoal from us. Let us try to find what that other substance is.

Heat very slowly a little dry wood, or a ball of cotton wool in the bottom of a test tube, held slantingly and closed with the thumb or with a cork. In either case clear drops of liquid will appear on the glass in the cooler part of the tube. This liquid looks like water, condenses like water, and feels like water. No matter how dry wood is, you can get water out of it by heating it. Of



course you cannot see the water escaping from the wood when the wood is heated directly in the flame, for the water would then pass off into the air as invisible steam. In the test tube, as the steam cannot escape, part of it condenses into liquid water, and so becomes visible. Chemists have found that dry wood and cellulose are made up of charcoal (carbon) and the two gases, hydrogen and oxygen, which compose water.

We cannot prove by our simple experiments that they contain nothing else, but we have found that they contain carbon and the elements of water. We must for the present accept the word of chemists, that there is nothing else in them.

It may seem strange indeed that carbon, familiar to us as black charcoal, and two gases which join to make water, do not make dry wood black and wet. But they are so united that the properties of the product are quite different from those of the substances which compose it. When two substances are so united that they lose the properties which they possess when separate, and their combination takes on other qualities, the substances are said to be *chemically united*, or to be in *chemical union*.

Mix some charcoal and water together in a bottle and see whether they unite chemically. No; the mixture is black like charcoal and liquid like water. In a piece of dried white wood there are just the same elements, but they were chemically united.

Only by burning the wood could the charcoal be separated from the oxygen and hydrogen, which at the same time joined to form water.

When the wood was heated it underwent *chemical decomposition*. If you continue to heat the wood in the closed test tube you may be confused by the fact that the clear liquid water which first appears becomes colored by something which dissolves in the water. This is due to the fact that although cellulose is composed of carbon and the elements of water only, in the process of chemical decomposition new substances are formed from the wood; but these new substances contain nothing which is not in the wood, that is, they are formed from the charcoal, the hydrogen and oxygen in the wood.

Examine dry starch in the same way that you did wood. If it chars you know that it contains charcoal. If when you heat it in a closed tube it yields water, as the wood did, you may infer that, like wood, it is made up of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. Apply the same tests to sugar, and draw your own conclusions.

Since dry wood, sugar and starch yield charcoal as well as hydrogen and oxygen combined in the same proportions as in water, they are called *carbohydrates*—*carbo* denoting charcoal (carbon), the rest of the name denoting water. It is remarkable that starch, sugar and wood, which



differ from each other in so many respects, should be composed of the same substances. We have seen that the charcoal and the gases which compose water are chemically united in these carbohydrates, for wood, sugar and starch are quite different in their properties from either carbon or water. No one would mistake either of them for carbon or for water.

You remember that we found water and starch in a potato. Were *they* chemically united? No, for the properties of the water were evident in the potato juice, and when we touched the pulp of the potato with iodine solution, a blue color appeared, showing that the starch is not chemically united with anything, else it would not display this property. Besides, we washed the starch out of the pulp, which we certainly could not do if it were chemically united with another substance.

When a substance is not in chemical union with another it is said to be *free* or *uncombined*. The water in potato juice is *free*.

Since wood is made up of substances chemically united, it is called a compound substance, or a *chemical compound*. As no one has been able to find anything in charcoal except charcoal, it does not seem to be composed of two different substances, and it is therefore called a *simple substance* or a *chemical element*.

## XV. WHAT BECOMES OF WOOD WHEN IT BURNS

*Material.*—Wide-mouthed bottles, matches, small sticks and shavings of dry wood, bowls and basins, and a jar. If suitable bottles are not available deep tumblers may be used instead. Lime-water for this lesson should be prepared two or three days in advance, as follows: Soak a lump of lime (quicklime) in water in a bowl, pour off the water which the lime does not absorb. Soon the lime will become quite hot and crumble into a dry powder. This dry powder is water-slacked lime. Put a few tablespoonfuls of the slacked lime into a jar. Fill the jar with water and stir the slacked lime through it. Cover, and set away to settle. When the water becomes clear, test it with litmus paper, to find whether it is acid or alkaline. This clear *solution of water-slacked lime* is called *lime-water*. Cover the jar to keep out the air. Cork up the remainder of the lime in a bottle and save it for use in making lime-water. It will change if you leave it exposed to the air.

Recall the fact that a stick of wood soon burns away in a stove. No wood or even charcoal remains—only a small quantity of gray ash, which is neither wood nor charcoal since it will not burn. What becomes of the wood? Whither does it go?

Set fire to a thin shaving of dry wood; keep it burning without smoke, till the wood and charcoal have all disappeared for some distance from the end. The wood is gone, yet you did not see it going. You saw the flame, but you saw nothing rising out of the flame; nevertheless, some gas, invisible to you, may have been ascending from the flame.



Set fire to one end of a dry stick, not larger than a lead pencil. Hold it so that it will burn with a small smokeless flame below the mouth of a dry wide-mouthed bottle, held inverted over the flame. See the liquid collecting on the inside of the bottle. Feel this liquid with your finger and taste it. Recollect that dry wood is composed of charcoal and the elements in water. *Water* from the burning wood must have risen out of the flame as invisible steam. You could not see the water till the steam condensed into liquid water on the glass.

Rinse the bottle, wipe it dry, and hold it again mouth downward over the smokeless flame of a burning stick. In a minute or even less, place the palm of your hand tightly against the mouth of the bottle to keep any gas which may have risen into the bottle out of the flame from escaping, and then turn the bottle mouth up. Partially remove your hand and quickly empty a little clear lime-water into the bottle. Cover the bottle tightly again as soon as the lime-water is in; and shake the lime-water *up and down* through the gas in the bottle. If you do this experiment carefully, you will see a decided change in the appearance of the lime-water.

There must have been in the bottle a gas which produces this effect on the lime-water. This gas was not in the bottle before it was held over the flame, as you can prove by shaking lime-water through

a bottle of air. The gas, therefore, must have risen out of the flame into the bottle. This gas is known as *carbon dioxide*. We can distinguish it from other gases by its effect on lime-water.

When we burn wood, then, we may catch as they ascend from the flame two substances which pass off as gases—water and carbon dioxide. Now wood contains carbon and the gases which combine to make water. This seems to show that the carbon of the wood must be in the carbon dioxide. If this gas were pure carbon it would become solid carbon as it cools, for carbon is solid at ordinary temperatures. So carbon dioxide must contain some other substance than the carbon of the wood; and the carbon in the gas must be chemically united with that other substance, for it has different properties from either. This means that carbon dioxide is a compound substance.

#### EXERCISES

1. Put some starch in an iron spoon and hold it over the flame of a spirit lamp, till the starch bursts into flame. Then catch the gases which arise from the flame, and find whether they are the same as those which come out of the flame of burning wood.

2. Try the same experiment with sugar.

3. When we burn wood or any other carbohydrate, which of the substances which make up the carbohydrate do we really burn?

4. Why can we not see anything except a little ash in place of the wood which we burn in our stoves?



## XVI. WHAT CARBONIC ACID GAS IS COMPOSED OF—OXIDATION

*Material.*—Charcoal, crystallized chlorate of potash, black oxide of manganese, lime-water, wooden toothpicks, small hardwood sticks, small squares of window glass, brass wire.

Procure some wood charcoal from a stove or by charring a piece of wood. Wind a piece of brass wire about a piece of charcoal, closely enough to prevent it from falling out. Leave part of the wire projecting for a handle. Shake together in a test tube a few crystals of chlorate of potash and a much smaller bulk of black oxide of manganese. Try a test stick (a hardwood toothpick is just the thing), first merely glowing at the tip, then burning with a flame, in the mouth of the test tube. Note the results, if any.

Heat the mixture with a spirit lamp, till a stick with a glowing tip will burst into flame when held in the mouth of the tube. Hold the tube away from the lamp and repeat the experiment until the stick will no longer burst into flame.

This gas cannot be air, for the glowing stick does not act in that way while it is in the air. This gas in which a stick burns so much faster than in air is called *oxygen*. Oxygen is another substance which has never been broken up into two different substances, and so is classified as a *simple substance* or *chemical element*.

Add a little more chlorate of potash to the mixture in the test tube. Insert the mouth of the test tube into the mouth of a small wide-mouthed bottle held with the mouth turned obliquely downward, and apply heat to the tube till a glowing stick will promptly burst into flame when held in the mouth of the *bottle*; then quickly cover the mouth of the bottle with a wet piece of glass. Heat the prepared charcoal till part of it is glowing. Hold it for a moment in the air; then lower it into the bottle of oxygen, allowing a piece of cardboard, through which you have passed the handle of the wire, to close loosely the mouth of the bottle. Note whether the charcoal becomes hotter or colder, when put into the oxygen, and whether it glows more or less brightly than before.

Take the wire with the remaining charcoal in it out of the bottle; and quickly, before the gas in the bottle has had time to mingle with the air outside, shake a little clear lime-water through it. The apparent change in the lime-water will convince you at once that carbon dioxide was formed by burning the charcoal in the oxygen.

If necessary, repeat the experiment to make sure whether the charcoal was disappearing as the new gas was being formed. You should explain, too, why the charcoal stopped burning. Since it was not for lack of charcoal, it must have been for lack of oxygen.



Now we must enquire what the carbon dioxide is composed of. It cannot be carbon in the form of gas, for if it were, it would become a solid as soon as it cooled down to the ordinary temperature. Neither is it something contained in the carbon, for charcoal is a simple substance. As oxygen is also a simple substance, the carbon dioxide could not have come from the oxygen. Since it is neither carbon nor oxygen, nor a part of either, it must be formed of the two chemically united together. This is made the more certain by the fact that both the charcoal and the oxygen were gradually disappearing in the bottle at the time the carbon dioxide was being formed. They were evidently disappearing by entering into chemical union, when a new substance with different properties from those of either was formed. Because this gas is made up of oxygen and one other simple substance it is called an *oxide*. As it contains two parts of oxygen to one of carbon it is called *carbon dioxide*. When carbon or any other substance unites with oxygen it is said to *oxidize* or undergo *oxidation*.

But how can we account for the charcoal becoming so hot while the oxidation was going on? It must be that the chemical union in some way produced or caused the heat and the bright light, for as soon as the oxidation ceased, both the heat

and the light disappeared. Heat so produced may be called *heat of chemical union*.

### EXERCISES

1. Put some lime-water into a small bottle and blow your breath through it by means of a tube till you get a decided effect. Argue from this experiment that carbon is oxidized in the body.

2. In what part of the body does the oxidation of carbon take place and at what temperature?

3. Find whether charcoal can be oxidized at this temperature outside of the body.

4. Where and how is the charcoal oxidized in the body taken in? How often?

5. Where and how is the oxygen, used in the body for oxidizing carbon, taken in? How often?

6. Prove by experiment that both vegetable food and animal food contain carbon.

7. Mention a case in which the oxidation of carbon produces heat without light.

---

## XVII. THE COMPOSITION OF THE AIR

*Material.*—Wide-mouthed bottles, dry pieces of wood, lime-water, a pitcher, tumblers or bowls, snow or ice, salt.

Burn without smoke for less than a minute the charred end of a dry stick in a bottle full of air. Remove the stick quickly, pour a little clear lime-water into the bottle, close its mouth with your hand, and shake the lime-water *up and down* through the bottle. You can tell by the result



that carbon dioxide was formed by burning the charcoal in the bottle.

Now that gas, as we found before, is a compound gas, made up of carbon and oxygen chemically united. The stick supplied the carbon (charcoal), but whence came the oxygen necessary to unite with the carbon? The carbon of the stick must have obtained the oxygen from the air which surrounded it; hence the air must contain *oxygen*.

The air, however, cannot be pure oxygen, else a glowing stick would burst into flame in the air as it does in oxygen. There must be some other gas mixed with the oxygen in the air—a gas which does not allow a stick to burn in it, for it prevents things from burning as rapidly in air as they would in oxygen. The gas which does this is *nitrogen*.

Notwithstanding the nitrogen in the air, the oxygen united with the burning charcoal; the nitrogen too displayed its own properties, by hindering the combustion. Since the oxygen and nitrogen in the air do not conceal each other's properties, we may conclude that they are not chemically united, but are merely intermingled.

Let us seek for other gases in the air. Look for water first. Fill a pitcher with water at the temperature of the room; no water soaks through or collects on the outside of the pitcher. Fill the pitcher with a mixture of snow or broken ice and

common salt. Water does collect on the outside of the pitcher. As the water could not soak through the sides of the vessel it must have come out of the air around the vessel; therefore the air of the room must contain water, but that water must exist in the air as an invisible gas, for we cannot see it till it condenses into a liquid. This invisible gas is in fact *steam*.

We shall next test the air for carbon dioxide. Shake lime-water through a bottle of air. The water remains clear. At first you are inclined to decide that the air contains no carbon dioxide; but this experiment only shows that there is not enough carbon dioxide in a bottle of air to have any visible effect on the lime-water. If the lime-water were exposed to the open air for a longer time there might be a perceptible effect.

Fill a tumbler or bowl half full of lime-water and leave it exposed to the air. Do not disturb the lime-water for some days, but look at it occasionally. You will observe a scum gradually forming on the exposed surface of the liquid. Since this scum only forms where the liquid meets the air, it must be caused by something in the air. Now we know that carbon dioxide acts on lime-water when mixed with it. To decide whether it is carbon dioxide in the air which caused the scum to form, put some lime-water in the bottom of a deep, wide-mouthed bottle. Burn a charred stick



in the bottle above the lime-water for a short time and quickly cork the bottle, or cover it with a slip of glass which has been smeared with vaseline, so that it will not let the gas escape from the bottle. Notice whether the scum forms more or less slowly than it did when the lime-water was exposed to the open air. Repeat the experiment if necessary. I think you will be able to show from this experiment that the air contains a small proportion of *carbon dioxide*.

We have now found four gases in the air. Other gases exist there in small proportions, but we cannot find them at present.

#### EXERCISES

1. Show whether nitrogen has any visible effect on lime-water.
2. Mention three gases in the air, in neither of which, when pure, will a stick burn.
3. When charcoal burns in the air, with which of the gases there does it unite? Why does it not unite with one or more of the others?

---

### XVIII. THE COMPOSITION OF WATER

*Material.*—Small pieces of zinc (granulated zinc is best), hydrochloric acid, test tubes, delivery tubes with corks or rubber stoppers, tumblers or wide-mouthed bottles. If delivery tubes are not available, the following experiments can be performed without them. By generating the gas in small bottles, even test tubes may be dispensed with.

Put small pieces of zinc to a depth of an inch

into a test tube. Add enough dilute hydrochloric acid to cause an active bubbling (effervescence). Insert a cork through which passes a delivery tube of  $\frac{1}{4}$ -inch bore. Hold a small wide-mouthed bottle inverted over the mouth of the tube to catch the gas as it issues. In about a minute, hold the bottle a short distance away from the tube with the mouth still turned downward, and set fire to the gas you caught in the bottle. Repeat the experiment till you see how fast the gas burns, and note the color of the flame. Turn the mouth of a bottle full of the gas upward at once, and find whether the gas will stay in the bottle till you set fire to it. Show that this gas is neither oxygen, nitrogen nor carbon dioxide. This combustible gas is called *hydrogen*, and like oxygen and nitrogen it is a simple substance.

We should next try to find what becomes of the hydrogen when it burns. Pour the liquid off the zinc in the test tube. Add acid as before. Insert the cork with the delivery tube and set fire to the hydrogen as it issues from the tube. Can you see anything issuing from the flame of the burning hydrogen? Hold a dry tumbler mouth downward just above the flame till a liquid condenses on the inside of the tumbler. Examine this liquid by taste and touch. How do you account for the fact that you did not catch any hydrogen in the tumbler?



Since water is the only substance we can find coming out of the flame in which the hydrogen is burning, we must conclude that water is the only substance which is produced by burning hydrogen in the air. We have found that when carbon burns in the air it unites with the oxygen there to form carbon dioxide, so it is highly probable that when hydrogen burns in the air it also unites with the oxygen in the air to form an oxide of hydrogen. As water is the only substance we found arising from the flame, we must conclude that water is this oxide of hydrogen and is composed of hydrogen and oxygen in chemical union. Hereafter, then, we must remember that water is *hydric oxide*; but we shall still continue to speak of it by its familiar name.

#### EXERCISES

1. Why can you see nothing coming out of the hydrogen flame?
2. Explain why water and carbon dioxide will not burn.
3. Explain how water extinguishes a fire.
4. What is really happening to a house when it is on fire? What invisible products are going off into the air from the fire?
5. Note whether solid sulphur, without heating or rubbing, has any smell, and try whether it is soluble in water. Burn a little sulphur without smoking, and find whether any gas comes out of the flame. How is this gas easily detected? Argue out the composition of this gas. It is called sulphurous acid gas. Shake a little water through a bottle containing the gas and test the solution with litmus paper.

**XIX. AMMONIA GAS AND ITS COMPOSITION**

*Material.*—Tumblers, test tubes, spirit lamps, small bottles, saucers or large nappies, litmus paper, water, lime (unslacked), sal ammoniac.

Mix in a dish about equal volumes of sal ammoniac and powdered lime (quicklime). Can you smell or see anything coming off from the mixture? The pungent gas which is set free by lime from the sal ammoniac is called ammonia gas.

Put a teaspoonful of the mixture into a test tube, and apply heat slowly. Do not make the mixture hot enough to smoke. Catch the ammonia—which is now set free more rapidly—in a small bottle, held so that the mouth of the test tube just enters the mouth of the bottle. In a minute or two, set the bottle, mouth down, in a shallow dish of water. Shake the bottle without lifting its mouth out of the water. The water should rise until it fills, or partly fills, the bottle. Test the ammonia still escaping from the test tube, with litmus paper, to find whether the ammonia gas is acid or alkaline; also try to set it on fire with a match. Turn the bottle mouth up, without losing the water which rose into it; taste the solution in the bottle, and test it with litmus.

You have illustrated in these experiments several properties of ammonia gas, but you have not found



what the gas is composed of. We cannot prove that by means of the simple apparatus we are using, so we will have to accept, without verification, what the chemists say about its composition. This is regrettable, but it is the best we can do at present.

Chemists have found that ammonia is a compound gas composed of two other gases, with both of which we have met, viz., *nitrogen* and *hydrogen*. We found nitrogen in the air some time ago, and we prepared hydrogen quite recently and found it to be one of the elements of water.

#### EXERCISES

1. Compare ammonia with each of the two gases of which it is composed. What does the fact that it differs so much from them indicate?

2. Try whether water will rise into a bottle of air when stood mouth down in water, as it does into a bottle containing ammonia gas. Explain the result.

3. Why did the water rise higher in some of the bottles containing ammonia than in others?

4. What became of the ammonia gas when the water rose into the bottles? Give reasons for your answer.

5. Show whether there is much ammonia in the air.

6. Show whether ammonia is an acid or an alkaline gas.

7. Since lime contains neither nitrogen nor hydrogen, what can you prove, from your experiments, about the composition of sal ammoniac?

8. Show whether sal ammoniac contains anything besides ammonia gas.

## XX. WHAT THE GLUTEN OF WHEAT IS COMPOSED OF

*Material.*—Powdered starch, wheat flour, dried gluten and beans; powdered lime or *dry*, water-slacked lime; litmus paper, red and blue, test tubes and spirit lamps; some simple contrivance for pulverizing the gluten and beans.

We shall first try whether lime will act on starch and gluten as it did on sal ammoniac. Rub lime on damp red litmus paper and note the visible effect. Put about  $\frac{2}{3}$  of an inch of powdered lime into a test tube. Add as much powdered starch as could be piled on a five-cent piece (or about the bulk of a pea), mix the lime and starch well together by shaking the tube. See that no lime is sticking to the glass in the mouth of the tube. Heat the mixture while you hold a strip of damp red litmus paper in the mouth; note the smell of the escaping gases, and whether there is any change in the color of the litmus paper. If no change appears, try damp *blue* litmus paper.

Repeat the preceding experiment, using powdered gluten instead of starch. You will find that an alkaline gas is set free by the lime, as when sal ammoniac was heated with lime. *That gas was ammonia*; it is likely then that this gas is the same. The odor of the ammonia may be disguised by the smell of other gases set free at the same time.

As no ammonia was set free when we used



starch, we must infer that the ammonia was set free by the lime acting on the gluten; therefore gluten must contain nitrogen, for ammonia contains nitrogen.

Try whether dried gluten will char. This is a test for carbon.

Besides carbon and nitrogen, gluten has been found by chemists to contain hydrogen, oxygen and a little sulphur—that is, it contains the three elements which make up the carbohydrates and two others—nitrogen and sulphur. We have proved that gluten contains carbon and nitrogen, but we cannot prove at present that it contains the other three elements.

The “gluten” is composed of several proteins mixed together. These proteins are compounds much more complex than the carbohydrates. Some, like one found in the potato, are soluble in water, others present in the gluten of wheat are insoluble in water.

They are often spoken of as nitrogeneous compounds, because they differ from the carbohydrates in containing nitrogen. Recollect here that nitrogen is that gas mixed with oxygen in the air which dilutes the oxygen to such an extent that a glowing stick will not burst into flame in the air. Indeed it has been proved that about four-fifths of the air is nitrogen.

## EXERCISES

1. Pulverize a well-dried bean, and test it for proteins by heating a mixture of the powdered bean and lime, and making the litmus test as you did in the case of gluten. You may be able to get the damp red litmus paper to turn blue without using the lime, but the color will soon change again. The principal protein in beans is called *legumin*. This name is taken from the word *legume*, which denotes a pod, such as that of a bean.

2. Test sugar for nitrogen in the same way as you did starch and gluten. If the gases set free have no effect on the color of red litmus paper, try blue litmus.

3. Find whether Indian corn meal contains gluten or other proteins.

---

XXI. VEGETABLE OILS AND ACIDS AND A SALT

*Material.*—Grains of corn soaked till quite soft, olive oil or some other vegetable oil, pieces of thin, white writing paper, litmus paper, sour fruits, starch, cotton wool, sugar, water-slacked lime, spirit lamps and test tubes, enamelled plates.

**Oils.** Look at a grain of soaked corn and you will observe, showing through the seed-case on one side of the grain, the outline of a body perhaps about one-fourth of an inch long and in shape resembling the half sole of a boot. Open the grain and take this body out. It is quite thick, and you will recognize it as the part of the grain which grew into the young plant at germination. It is, therefore, often called the *germ* but it really is an embryo. Remove several of these embryos from the grains, dry them, and examine them for oil.



Place a drop of olive oil or any other vegetable oil on a piece of thin writing paper, and hold the paper between you and the window. The oil spot on the paper will become nearly transparent. As olive oil is a fixed oil, the spot will remain indefinitely.

Crush two dry embryos of Indian corn and place the fragments on a square slip of white writing paper. Lay the paper on an enamelled plate, and heat the plate slowly over a lamp or on a stove or radiator, taking care not to burn or char the paper. Press the fragments against the paper. In a short time you should get a clear spot on the paper resembling an oil spot, and permanent like it.

The oil spot can be obtained without heat by covering the fragments of the germs with a few drops of benzene. The benzene will dissolve out the oil which will leave a spot on the paper after the benzene itself has evaporated. But benzene is such an inflammable substance that it is not safe to use it in a school. Gasoline and ether will also dissolve oil, but they too are very inflammable.

Mention other plants which store up oil in their seeds or fruits.

Put a few drops of a vegetable oil into a teaspoon and hold the spoon in the flame of a spirit lamp until the oil takes fire. It will burst into flame sooner if you tip the spoon a little, so

that the hot oil will approach the edge close to the flame. Hold a wide-mouthed bottle, mouth down, over the flame. Feel the liquid which gathers on the inside of the bottle.

Catch in the bottle the invisible gases escaping from the flame. Place your hand promptly over the mouth of the bottle, and shake a little lime-water *up and down* through the bottle while still keeping it closed with your hand.

You should now be able to prove that both water and carbon dioxide rise from the burning oil. But when a substance is burning in the air—as we have shown before—it or some substance in it is uniting with the oxygen of the air. Now what substances must the oil contain in order that water and carbon dioxide may be formed by burning it? Water is formed by hydrogen uniting with oxygen, and carbon dioxide is formed by carbon uniting with oxygen; hence the oil must contain carbon and hydrogen.

We cannot prove that the oil contains oxygen, for when a substance is burning in the air it is taking oxygen *from the air*. Chemists tell us, however, that most oils contain some oxygen, but not so much as carbohydrates do. It seems, then, that vegetable oils contain the same elements as the carbohydrates, but in a different proportion.

**Acids.** Heat a bit of starch in a tube, closed with



your thumb, until gases with a strong smell are given off. Then put a piece of blue litmus paper into the tube. The effect will show that an acid has been formed. Now since the acid has been formed from the starch, it is evident that the acid contains no other elements than those of starch—viz., carbon, hydrogen and oxygen. We have not proved, of course, that it contains all of these, and will therefore be compelled to accept that conclusion on the authority of chemists.

Cut slices off several sour fruits, and press a piece of blue litmus paper against the juicy pulp. You will find that the effect indicates an acid in each case. The sour taste common to all of these fruits must be due to the presence of the acids, so we may consider a sour taste as good an indication of an acid as the litmus test. The principal acid of the apple is called *malic acid*, from the Latin word "*malum*," which denotes an apple. The distinctive acid of the lemon is called *citric acid*. These acids are also found in other fruits, but there are many different vegetable acids.

Find whether the two other carbohydrates you have met with—sugar and cellulose—yield acids when heated in a closed tube. You may use cotton wool, as it is pure cellulose.

**A Salt.** Squeeze the juice out of half a lemon. Taste it and test it with litmus paper. To what is

the taste and the action on litmus due? Taste water-slacked lime, and test it with damp litmus paper. The taste and the effect on litmus indicates that water-slacked lime belongs to the class of substances called *bases* or *alkalies*. Their action on litmus is just opposite to that of an acid.

Stir water-slacked lime into the lemon juice, a little at a time, until the liquid will neither turn blue litmus red nor red litmus blue, or at least very slowly, and till the liquid has neither a sour nor an alkaline taste. Dilute with water, if necessary. Set the dish over the flame of a spirit lamp, or on a hot stove or a radiator, until the water has evaporated.

The dry residue which remains in the dish is called a *salt*. This is a salt of citric acid, because that acid was mixed with a base to produce the salt. The name of this salt is *citrate of lime*. You can see that this name is formed from the names of the acid and base which were mixed to produce the salt.



## XXII. TREES IN WINTER

*Material.*—Small branches from various trees, jars or large bottles containing water, tincture of iodine, spirit lamps.

It is now past midwinter and the trees have been exposed for many weeks to all the severities of our northern climate. Let us examine branches of some of them, and try to learn what the trees have been doing, or whether they have simply been “standing it” till spring should arrive.

You can readily tell whether the branches have grown any longer or the buds any larger than they were in the autumn. It will be interesting to try whether the dormant buds can be got to develop at this season, several weeks sooner than their usual time. If we place them in spring conditions will they respond as though it were really spring? Let us try.

Set a few branches from neighboring trees—willows, poplars, apples, etc.—in jars or bottles of water, and stand them in a warm, sunny room at home or in the school building. Change the water occasionally, and note any signs of life which become apparent in the buds.

Bring in fresh branches from time to time, and remove from the water those which fail to show a satisfactory response to the new conditions. Before long some buds will begin to develop.

Note whether the bud-scales leave any marks or scars behind them when they drop off, and watch to see what each bud becomes. Especially observe whether a leaf-bud simply develops into a leaf or into a branch bearing one or more leaves. Count the number of leaves which appear on the branch which develops from one bud.

Some of the buds may develop into short branches bearing flowers or flower-clusters. A *leaf-bud* develops into a branch bearing one or more foliage-leaves; whereas a *flower-bud* or *fruit-bud* becomes a short branch, bearing one or more sets of flower-leaves, sepals, petals, stamens, carpels.

A flower, then, with its stalk may be regarded as a branch whose leaves are usually grouped close together upon a short stem forming whorls closely set one above the other, and arranged so that they can in different ways join in helping to reproduce the plant.

In watching the growth of the bud, you should not fail to notice whether the leaves *grow*—from little leaves when they first appear to be large leaves—or whether they merely unfold.

Record the date at which some particular bud begins to swell. In two or three weeks measure the length of the new branch into which it has grown, and calculate how much it increased in length, on an average, in one week—in one day—in one hour.



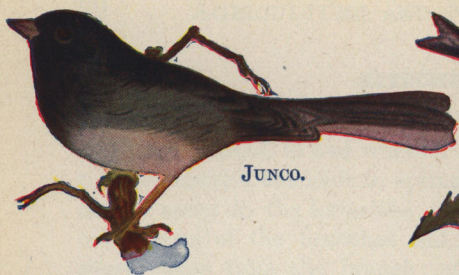
## EXERCISES

1. Early in the winter we may begin to test the branches and buds of trees, to find whether there is any food stored in them to nourish the buds in spring when they begin to grow, and to assist in the formation of new wood and bark in the older parts of the branches and in the main stem. Cut off short pieces from the branch; split them and test them for starch and sugar. Test the buds themselves as well as the stem for stored food.

2. Near the close of the winter, but before the buds begin to swell, you may find signs of activity in the main stem and branches. Pull off some of the bark and test the juicy layer under it by taste, and in other ways. This part of the stem and its branches is called the *cambium layer*. Examine it and other portions of the stem again later in the season, and try to find what becomes of the food materials you found.







JUNCO.



AMERICAN  
GOLDFINCH.



SONG-SPARROW.



VESPER SPARROW.



PHOEBE.



TOWHEE.

From "Birds of Canada."—NUTTALL. (*Reproduced by permission.*)

## SPRING LESSONS

### XXIII. THE RETURN OF THE BIRDS

At the first indication of the approach of spring you may be on the watch for the return of the earliest of the feathered songsters who last autumn were impelled southward by a strong impulse which nearly all our wild birds feel and must obey. While yet the snow overspreads the fields, except in a few favored spots, we may wake any bright morning to hear again the sweet note of the Song Sparrow, the more monotonous measure of the Junco, or the cheerful song of the American Robin. As the days lengthen, and the sun's heat melts the snow and releases the ice-bound streams, more species continue to arrive, each with its distinctive song, plumage and habits of life.

I am sure that it will add much to the pure and simple pleasures of your lives to learn the songs of the birds—not perhaps well enough to sing or whistle them—but at least to print them on your memory so clearly that you can recognize all the commoner birds by their notes.

The marked differences in the plumage, size and habits of the species will soon enable you to distinguish those which frequent the near-by fields,



trees and waters. Of course these are not all birds of song, but all have their peculiar calls and cries. The school library should contain a good book on birds, with descriptions of the species which may be found in your region; and there may be a bird lover in your neighborhood who is sufficiently well acquainted with birds to give you their names from your descriptions. If these means fail, the descriptions may be sent to some authority on birds, who will be glad to send you their names. Be careful, however, to give descriptions which bring out the distinctive characteristics of each species.

But let me beg of you not to shoot the bird to settle the question of its name. It is far better that you should never know the name than that you should take its innocent life. Close observation and patient waiting will be rewarded in nearly every case by the discovery of the bird's identity; and, if not, the training will be good for you, and help to make you keener of eye and steadier in purpose.

As spring advances, you will find great delight in watching the happy and industrious home-life of the birds which build their nests in your neighborhood. You can induce many birds to set up housekeeping close to your home and your school, by providing nesting-places for them in the way of little houses made of old boards or pieces of

hollow logs set up on tall poles. You may attract many birds too, by planting trees and shrubs which yield fruits agreeable to the birds. A shallow dish set on top of a pole or on a shelf outside your window, and supplied with water occasionally, will be a great convenience to birds as a place for drinking and bathing.

Every day you will learn something new about their ways, as you watch them making their nests, hatching their eggs, and feeding their young; and you will find that nearly all these birds feed mainly on the seeds of weeds, or else upon the various forms of insect life. Birds thus render a service to the country which can only be stated in millions of dollars. Were it not for the birds, destructive insects would certainly multiply so rapidly that the annual loss, due to their ravages upon our crops, orchards and forests—which is now very great—would be vastly increased.

It is true that sometimes a flock of birds will make a run upon a cherry tree or a grain field, and may thus cause loss to a single person, although the species in the long run may be worth much more to the country than it costs. The English Sparrow, however, is one bird for which little defence can be made. I can only ask that, in destroying these sparrows by poisons or otherwise, care may be taken not to destroy useful or harmless birds of other species.



Allowing for such rare exceptions, let us all do our part to protect and encourage bird life. We can thus render valuable service to our country, while at the same time the simple and gentle lives of the birds will help to sweeten our spirits and divert our thoughts from the cares and worries which even children sometimes feel. Our ears will gradually become more sensitive to the birds' songs and other soothing influences of nature through which the kind Father of all life would speak peace to troubled hearts.

In the spring-time, too, many wild things, from the clumsy toad to the graceful deer, which have solved with more or less success the problem of existence in the winter without migration, will emerge from retirement to play their parts in the drama of life. Let me bespeak from you a generous treatment of these defenceless wild creatures. The world would be a much less interesting home for man without them. We want our country to be well cultivated and productive, but we can surely spare a little space and a little food for our lowlier brethren of the wild.

“He prayeth best who loveth best  
All things, both great and small ;  
For the dear God who loveth us,  
He made and loveth all.”

#### XXIV. THE SEED AND THE LITTLE PLANT WITHIN IT

*Material.*—Flower-pot saucers, table plates, pieces of blotting paper or flannel, flower-pots, shallow wooden boxes, garden soil, a collection of seeds—some large and some small, including beans and grains of corn.

In the latter part of March or early in April, soak a few beans and grains of corn, and place them between damp pieces of blotting paper or of woollen cloth in a flower-pot saucer or table plate, and cover the whole with a shallow dish inverted over the cloth or paper. Record the number of each kind of seed used, so that you can calculate the percentage of good seeds. Keep the dishes in a warm place and add water from time to time to keep the paper or cloth moist.

When you find the seeds are beginning to germinate, soak some more beans and grains of corn for a day or two, until the seed-coat or seed-case can be easily removed from the seed. Examine the germinating beans to see at what point the root-end of the growing plant emerges from the seed-coat. Find the same place in a dry bean.

When the young bean plant has entirely escaped from the seed-coat, examine it again with care. It should have a pair of thin veiny leaves, a short stem upon which these leaves grow, a pair of thick, fleshy organs below the pair of thin leaves,



and a continuation of the stem below these, terminating in a root-like part. The two fleshy organs grow on the same stem-like part as the two thin leaves, so we must classify them also as leaves—the first or lowest pair of leaves. The root-like part of the little plant will soon bear root-hairs. We have here then a complete plant with all the organs of vegetation—stem, leaves, and root with its root-hairs.

Now remove the coat from a recently soaked bean, taking care not to break or injure anything inside the coat. Note that the body which you have left in your hand, after removing the coat, has all its parts connected together. You will find the two thick leaves connected by a short stem which ends in an undeveloped root bent up against their edges. Part them slightly or break one of them off, and you will find a little bud with two thin leaves lying in a slight hollow between the thick leaves. So we have found in the seed of the bean, before germination has begun at all, a complete but undeveloped bean plant, with a stem bearing four leaves, and at the lower end of the stem the beginnings of a root.

This little plant contained in the seed is known as the *embryo*. The two thick leaves so laden with nourishment that they seem most unlike ordinary foliage leaves, are called the *seed-leaves*, because they are the first and principal leaves of the

embryo. The two thin leaves are not called seed-leaves, although they also are leaves of the plantlet. From their resemblance to a little plume, they, together with the growing point between them, are called the *plumule*. There are two leaves then in the one plumule.

It is clear that the seed of a bean is made up of two parts—the *seed-coat* and the embryo which fills the seed-coat, and that the plantlet is made up of *four* leaves and the *axis* to which they are attached. This axis—as it appears before germination—is almost entirely a stem bearing the four leaves, the lower end or radicle not having yet developed into an evident root.

In a former experiment we found a carbohydrate (starch) and a protein (legumin) in a bean seed. These two substances must be mainly stored up in the thick seed-leaves of the seed plantlet. This would seem to account for the rapid growth of the plantlet at first.

Set out some of the germinating beans in a good soil in flower-pots or boxes. Keep them warm and moist and watch their continued growth. Also plant some dry beans.

Examine a soaked grain of corn as you did the bean. Remove the little body lying in one side of the grain—the body which you know as the *germ*. It is harder than the rest of the soaked grain, not having absorbed water so freely. Com-



pare it with the young corn plant you obtained by germination.

It will soon appear that this so-called germ is a little corn embryo. The slender, straight, stem-like part which lies in the middle of the flatter side of the germ is the *axis*, at the top end of which is the plumule, while from the lower end the root strikes out. The broad, fleshy part of the embryo is the *seed-leaf*, corresponding to one of the thick leaves of the bean embryo.

The plantlet of Indian corn has but one seed-leaf, and its plumule shows at first to the naked eye no distinct leaves to correspond with the two leaves of the bean plumule. In the bean, the plantlet fills the seed-coat, so there is no food stored in the seed outside of the embryo; but in the grain of corn the plantlet occupies only the smaller part of the grain. Examine the large mass of stored food which fills the interior of the grain outside of the embryo. A great part of it is floury, white and opaque because it is largely starch. But just below the coats of the grain is a transparent horny region rich in gluten.

You will recollect that we found some time ago that the germ of Indian corn contains much oil. This is food stored up in the embryo.

Plant grains of corn in pots or boxes of earth, and follow the development of the young plants for several weeks

The seeds of clover, turnips, etc., are so small that you cannot without a magnifying glass see plainly the little plants in them. This difficulty is easy to overcome. You have only to place the seeds in conditions favorable to germination, when the embryos will burst the seed-coats, and will soon be sufficiently large for you to see them and their organs quite plainly.

Compare these little seedlings with those of the bean and the Indian corn, and note whether they have one or two seed-leaves; also observe in which of them the new leaves are arranged in pairs, and in which they are alternate, one above another.

From these studies we must conclude that every perfect seed contains a little plant and that the parent plant lays up a store of food for the plantlet, either in the embryo itself or in the seed outside of the plantlet, or in both situations. It is now plain that it is not the seed which grows but the little plant within the seed.

#### EXERCISES

1. Grow in pots or shallow boxes, from tested seeds, some of the common garden plants, such as tomatoes, cabbages, lettuce, cucumbers, pansies, asters, etc., to be set out in the school or home garden.



2. Place some potato tubers in a dark warm closet or box (to represent a cellar) ; others in a warm room exposed to the sunlight. In two or three weeks inspect them, and decide from the results which is the better way of sprouting potatoes for early planting.

---

## XXV. THE SEASONAL CHANGES OF SPRING— SPRING CALENDAR

As soon as the first returning bird appears you should begin a Nature Calendar for spring. In it record the various events and changes which mark the approach and progress of spring.

The birds and flowers of spring will be especially attractive to nearly everyone. In early spring many birds frequent the trees and fields near our homes for a while before they set up housekeeping in woods and retired places.

*In many parts of the country the groves and forests are veritable flower gardens during the greater part of the month of May. Any one who has any appreciation of natural beauty should delight to learn something of the habits of these wild plants of spring, and find out their names. I hope, however, you will not pull them up ruthlessly, but spare them to beautify the earth for succeeding generations. I am moved to remind you of this, because already in some districts—especially in the vicinity of towns and villages—*

all these beautiful plants have been practically exterminated.

I shall enumerate here some of the features of the spring-time which are worthy of notice and of record in your calendar: The change in length of the shadow of some definite object—to be recorded once every few weeks at the same hour of the day; the temperature of the air at a certain hour—entered once a week; the length of the day (from sunrise to sunset) as recorded in the almanac—once a week; the disappearance of snow from the fields and ice from the streams; sudden changes of weather; the first appearance of different species of migratory birds, the dates of their nesting, and the period of hatching; the time when sap begins to run in the trees, and the buds to swell; the dates of the blossoming and leafing of the trees and shrubs in woods and orchards; the blooming of early spring flowers; the dates of sowing the different garden and field seeds, and the first appearance of the plants above ground; what kinds of plants suffered from spring frost, with dates.

#### EXERCISES

1. How much longer is the time of daylight (from sunrise to sunset) on June 1st than on April 1st?
2. How much longer or shorter is your shadow at noon on June 21st than on March 21st? Account for the fact.
3. How do you explain the gradual rise in the temperature during the spring months?



4. How is it that the buds of trees and the early flowering plants can develop so rapidly in spring, while the soil is yet quite cold?

5. What trees or shrubs were in bloom on the day you sowed your first carrots, beets, peas, corn?

6. What trees in your neighborhood blossom before their leaves expand?

7. Find one or more trees (or shrubs) in which the pollen-bearing flowers (staminate flowers) and the seed-bearing flowers (pistillate flowers) are in separate clusters on the same tree, and one or more in which they are in separate clusters on separate trees.

8. Find, by observation, when the trees are in bloom, whether their blossoms are pollinated by insects, or whether all trees depend on the wind to convey pollen from the stamens to the pistils.

---

## XXVI. THE SCHOOL GARDEN

School gardening is gradually becoming a very useful feature of school life. It affords an agreeable change from the book and desk work which prevails throughout the cold months. The knowledge and training to be gained in the school garden is certainly no less healthy and useful than the results of the indoor studies. So I hope your school, if it is not already provided with a school garden, will make a beginning this spring, if only with a small plot a few square feet in area.

As soon as the soil is dry enough, have it thoroughly cultivated with plough and harrow, or else with a spade and rake. A sufficient quantity

of good old manure should be worked in at the same time, and the rootstocks of couch-grass and other weeds carefully removed.

If the garden area is large enough, the ground should be laid out in plots upon some definite plan. Four feet by eight or ten feet is a good size for single plots to be cultivated by individual pupils; but if the space is quite limited, several pupils may undertake the joint cultivation of one plot. Walks at least two feet wide should be left between the plots.

Flower seeds may be sown at the ends of the plots with vegetables between, or the flowers may be grown in separate plots, with the vegetable plots arranged symmetrically about them. Perennial flowering plants may be grown along the borders of the garden, or in central or corner plots. The arrangement of the plots and plants, however, should be determined by the tastes of the gardeners, and the size and shape of the ground.

As a rule, the plots should not be raised much above the level of the walks. The soil, particularly near the borders of the plots, does not become so parched during drought under level culture.

The catalogues issued by seedsmen will give the necessary information as to the time for sowing the seeds of different plants, the depth and distance of sowing, and so forth. The larger seeds as a rule should be covered more deeply than small ones.



The very smallest ones may be sown on the surface, and thinly covered by fine soil sifted over them by hand.

The soil immediately above the seeds, but not between the rows, may be pressed down with a narrow board or with the back of a hoe. This brings the soil into close contact with the seeds, so that they can draw moisture from it more readily.

Soon after the garden seeds are sown, wild plants—weeds—will begin to appear, perhaps before the seeds you sowed have germinated. These weeds, if allowed to grow, will rob the garden plants of food and water, cut off much of the sunlight and hinder the circulation of the air. You can easily show the effect of weeds by allowing them to grow in a small plot in which garden seeds have been planted.

The weeds are easily kept down if they are never allowed to make much headway. Go over the soil between the rows often with a hoe or rake. This frequent cultivation will root up the weeds that have come up, and bring many that are just germinating to the surface, where they will dry up and die. If the spaces between the rows are as wide as a narrow garden rake, or wider, the soil between the rows can be cultivated very rapidly with a rake to the depth of two or three inches. Some of the weeds in the rows may be taken out

with a hoe or a weeder, but some of them must be removed by hand.

Thin the garden plants out to the proper distance apart as soon as they are large enough. Some vegetables may be only partially thinned at first, and when large enough for table use, part of them may be taken for food, leaving the intermediate plants to grow.

The frequent stirring of the soil with hoe or rake serves another purpose quite as important as the killing of the weeds. The loose layer of earth formed by raking or hoeing the soil hinders the water from escaping from the soil underneath, and keeps it there to be absorbed by the tiny rootlets by means of their root-hairs.

Were it not for the loose earth mulch formed by the rake, the water would evaporate into the air so fast that the soil about the roots would become very dry and the plants would suffer greatly from want of water, and of course would be retarded in their growth. To demonstrate this, keep a small plot free from weeds, but do not cultivate it at all. Compare the growth of the plants in this plot with those in a well-cultivated plot close by. We shall try to explain later how the loose earth mulch hinders the water from evaporating from the soil below.

The stirring of the surface soil answers the same purpose as watering, so that we may be said to



water the garden with the hoe or rake. Indeed, if we stir the surface once or twice a week, there will be little or no need for watering, unless the weather is exceedingly dry.

If any of the seeds fail to grow, sow others in their places. If early vegetables are used before midsummer, a second crop may be grown on the same ground; in this way all the available area will be occupied throughout the season.

If any of your plants are attacked by insects or diseases, try to find by inquiry or by consulting books or agricultural bulletins the proper remedies, and apply them in good time. Above all, keep your garden free from weeds to the very last.

If you thus tend your garden during the spring months, and arrange for its cultivation during the summer vacation, you will be surprised and fully rewarded to see how the plants have responded to your care—each kind in its own way. Your garden before summer has ended will be a mass of verdure and bloom, delightful to look upon. You may gather from your plot fresh juicy vegetables for the home table or that of a neighbor who has no garden, and flowers for a friend or for a poor invalid who would be helped by your sympathy expressed in this practical way.

In the autumn, after the crop has been removed, the garden should be manured, and either ploughed or spaded to a sufficient depth.

**Window and Flower-Pot Gardening.** In case your school has no ground available for a garden, not even for a class plot, you will have to confine yourselves to window and flower-pot gardening. Much interesting and instructive work can be done in window boxes, or in flower-pots set on cheap stands. Bulbs and other flowering plants and ferns may be grown, and will add greatly to the attractiveness of the school-room and hallways. Specimens of grains and of the common garden vegetables should be grown also. Much may be learned about their habits and capabilities by varying the conditions of light, heat and moisture.

---

## XXVI. THE MAKING AND TRANSFERENCE OF STARCH IN PLANTS

(For a bright warm day in the latter part of May or in June)

*Material.*—Leaves from growing shoots, some green, some wholly or partly white, Fehling's solution if available, iodine solution, test tubes or enamelled cups, spirit lamps, fresh stalks of grass, potatoes with long white shoots sprouted in a cellar or in a dark box; a little common alcohol or methylated spirits.

In the afternoon, shortly before sunset, gather a few green leaves from rapidly growing plants which have been exposed to the light of the sun since morning. Nasturtium and Sweet Pea leaves



answer well for the following experiments, but you should try others also. Boil each leaf, or *part* of a leaf, at once, in water, for about a minute, and soak it in ordinary alcohol or in methylated spirits till the leaf-green is nearly or quite extracted. You may heat the alcohol to hasten the process, but if you do, be careful not to set it on fire. The leaf will gradually become nearly white.

Pour off the alcohol, wash with water, and cover the leaf with tincture (alcoholic solution) of iodine *slightly diluted with water*. If it turns blue or blue-black in color you must infer that it contains starch, and this is the result you will obtain if you perform the experiment at the proper time, and in the right way. Therefore, repeat the experiment if your results are not decisive.

Collect early in the morning some leaves from the same plants, and keep them in a dark box or closet; or better, cover the whole plant with a box till later in the day when you are ready for the next experiment. Then treat the leaves just as you did those which were gathered in the evening. You should find that they do not turn blue, as did the other leaves.

These leaves, like the others, no doubt contained plenty of starch in the evening before you gathered them. It must be, then, that the green leaves make starch in the daylight, and that the starch disappears from them in the darkness.

Find a leaf which is wholly or in part white, and test it for starch after boiling it in water. You will conclude that both leaf-green and light, as well as the heat required for the activity of the plant, are necessary for the making of starch in leaves, and presumably in the other green parts of plants.

Now we have found that starch disappears from the leaves in the night. We have shown also that starch is stored up in tubers, seeds and other organs. Indeed, starch appears to be the principal form in which carbohydrates are stored as food.

As the parts in which it is stored are devoid of leaf-green, the starch could not have been made in the organs in which it is stored. It must have been transferred from the leaves to the storage organs; but we found when we analyzed a potato that the starch was not soluble in the watery sap or juice. It is clear, then, that the starch made within the leaves must be changed into some form which will dissolve in cold water, for the solid starch could not pass through the plant from one part to another.

While starch is a carbohydrate insoluble in cold water, sugar is a carbohydrate which dissolves readily in cold water. Now we find that sugar is present in green plants where growth is going on. In the spring, when growth is about to begin in trees, the sap is sweet with sugar. Pull a growing stalk of grass in two; chew the tender white part

168025

PROVINCIAL LIBRARY,  
VICTORIA, B. C.



of the stem where growth is taking place. Test the sprouts of a potato with iodine solution and with Fehling's solution, if available. The sprouts may be cut into small pieces and boiled in water, and the liquid poured off and tested as in previous experiments. You may find sugar present. The material for making the sugar came out of the tuber. These with other facts which you can easily discover, point strongly to the conclusion that the starch formed in the leaves is transported from them to other parts of the plant in the form of sugar.

If the sugar is not used at once it may turn into starch again, as when starch made in the leaves of the potato plant is conveyed down the stalks in the form of sugar into the tubers, where it is reconverted into starch, which forms about 80 per cent. of the dry matter of a potato tuber.

If you leave some tubers in a dark box, little tubers will be formed on the white stems. If you test these little tubers for starch you will find a good proof that sugar can be changed into starch by plants.

#### EXERCISES

1. Write out in your own words an argument to prove that green leaves make starch in the day-time.
2. Prove that a plant, or at least some plants, can change starch into sugar.
3. Give proofs that sugar can be changed back into starch in a plant.

**XXVIII. WHAT PLANTS MAKE STARCH OUT OF**

(For a bright day late in May or in June)

*Material.*—Several wide-mouthed bottles, such as pickle-bottles or milk-bottles, a pail of water, saucers or glass nappies, tapers or candles, fresh leafy shoots from rapidly growing plants, a potted plant which has wilted for lack of water.

Water thoroughly the roots of a potted plant whose leaves have wilted for lack of water. Do not put any water on the leaves. Also set some shoots with wilted leaves in a vessel of water.

Hold a wide-mouthed bottle mouth down, and push a burning taper or a small candle up into it a little way. When the flame dies out, cover the mouth of the bottle with your hand. Turn it mouth up, and shake a little lime-water through the gas in the bottle. Evidently the candle contains carbon which in burning unites with the oxygen of the air in the bottle to form enough carbon dioxide to produce the observed effect on the lime-water.

Rinse the bottle and burn the taper in it again till the flame is extinguished. Put up into the bottle a leafy shoot from an actively growing plant. Push the burning candle up a short distance into the bottle beside the shoot, and, as soon as the flame dies out, promptly stand the bottle with its mouth down in a dish which contains enough



water to seal the mouth of the bottle and keep the gas inside from mixing with the air outside.

Prepare two other bottles in exactly the same manner. Set two of these bottles, with the dishes in which they stand, in or close to a sunny window, and set the other in a closet, or cover it with a box, to shut out the light.

Burn a taper in a fourth bottle till the flame dies out for lack of oxygen, and set this bottle mouth down in a dish of water, but do not put a leafy shoot into it. Set this bottle also in a sunny window. All these things should be done in the forenoon as early as convenient.

Before school closes in the afternoon, finish the experiments begun in the morning. Take one of the bottles set in the sunlight with a leafy shoot in it, dish and all, and lower the dish and bottle into a pail of water. Let the dish sink. Put your hand down into the pail of water and pull the leafy shoot down out of the bottle, taking care not to allow any air to enter the bottle. Cover the mouth of the bottle with your hand, raise it out of the water, turn its mouth up, and shake lime-water through it.

If you have performed the experiment successfully you will be forced to conclude that the carbon dioxide, which was produced in the bottle by burning the taper in it, must have been taken up or absorbed by something.

Place the bottle which had no plant in it with its mouth in the pail of water. Let the dish drop, turn the bottle mouth up with your hand upon its mouth, and shake lime-water up and down through it. The lime-water will become milky in appearance. You can now show whether it was the leafy shoot in the first bottle or the water which took up the carbon dioxide.

Take the plant out of the other bottle which was set in the light. In doing so, proceed as with the first, so as to admit no air. Raise it till its mouth is out of the pail and quickly try to burn the taper in it. Recollect that the taper would not burn in it when you set it in the sunlight. When the taper ceases to burn, shake lime-water through again. How do you explain the result of this experiment?

Turn next to the bottle set in darkness. Get the leafy shoot out of it as you did out of the others, and test the gas in the bottle with lime-water. The result will show whether the leaves in this bottle took up the carbon dioxide.

Let us now try to interpret all the facts brought out in these experiments. It seems that green leaves on a growing shoot take in during the day-time carbon dioxide from the air around them, but that this process ceases when the plant is in darkness, that is, in the night.

Think of this in connection with our previous



conclusion, that green leaves make starch in the day-time, but not at night. It seems that the leaves are absorbing carbon dioxide at the same time that they are making starch, and at night when they are not making starch they cease to absorb carbon dioxide. In other words, the demand for carbon dioxide ceases when the starch-making ceases.

This looks as though the carbon dioxide is used in making the starch, and this might well be, for carbon dioxide contains carbon, and starch consists of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, the elements which compose water. The carbon dioxide might yield the carbon and oxygen necessary to produce starch, but it contains no hydrogen. This must be obtained from some other source.

Look at the plants whose roots we watered this morning, and the shoots whose leaves were withered. Probably by this time the limp, helpless-looking leaves have straightened up, and are now quite firm and vigorous in appearance. We know that there is water in the juice of leaves; but the water applied to the roots could certainly not make the leaves firm and plump again unless it had ascended the stem and footstalks and entered the blades of the leaves.

If leaves take in any water at all *from the air*, it cannot be much, for it does not keep the leaves from wilting; but if water be applied to the roots

it soon restores the wilted leaves. This shows why the rootlets require root-hairs. The root-hairs have such thin walls, and are so numerous, that they must absorb water faster than the main part of rootlets could.

We have just argued that leaves obtain the carbon for starch-making from the carbon dioxide taken in during the day-time, and now we see that leaves obtain much water which is carried up the stem to them from the roots. It is extremely likely, then, that green leaves make starch out of the carbon of carbon dioxide, chemically united with the hydrogen and oxygen of the water which was absorbed by the root-hairs, and ascended the stem to the leaves.

Recollect that when you heated starch in a closed tube, you obtained carbon and water from the starch. The leaves do not take in free carbon, but carbon dioxide, which consists of carbon and oxygen. They only need the carbon of this gas and not its oxygen in making starch, since enough oxygen to make starch can be obtained from water.

This explains why the taper would burn in the bottle in which the leafy shoot had been left for several daylight hours. The leaves, while they were making starch in the sunlight, were giving off as much oxygen as was contained in the carbon dioxide, from which they were using the carbon in starch-making. The leaves then must break up



the carbon dioxide and water, using the carbon, hydrogen and part of the oxygen in making starch, and setting the rest of the oxygen free. The oxygen, or part of it, must be exhaled from the leaves in the sunlight, else the taper would not have burned in the bottle afterwards.

Although starch in plants changes into sugar, the reverse also occurs. It is generally believed that sugar is formed before starch in the leaves, and is only converted into the latter when more is produced than can be used for food at once. Finally we may claim that cellulose, which is the most lasting of the three carbohydrates we have found in plants, is produced from the same materials as the other two. It is evident that plants make for themselves all the starch, sugar and cellulose they contain, for neither the soil nor the air contains any of these substances. When we consider what a large amount of wood one large tree contains, it astonishes us that this one plant should have been able to produce enough food in the form of starch or sugar to form such an immense weight of wood.

#### EXERCISES

1. Write out in your own words your reasons for believing that green leaves use carbon dioxide and water in making starch.
2. Point out whether it is correct to say that a commercial starch factory *makes* starch. What is the fact?
3. Show why trees and other plants need such an immense spread of leaf surface.

## XXIX. THE BREATHING OF PLANTS

*Material.*—Peas and sunflower seeds or other seeds which contain large seed-plantlets. wide-mouthed bottles, large corks, lime-water.

Soak a sufficient quantity of peas in water until their coats are easy to remove. As peas are seeds, each should contain a little plant. Confirm this by removing the seed-coat. How many leaves has the embryo of the pea? How many seed-leaves? Although this embryo is much like that of the bean you will notice some differences.

Put a little cotton wool drenched with water into a wide-mouthed bottle—a six-ounce (6 oz.) prescription bottle will answer well for this purpose—and cover the cotton with a layer of soaked peas about half an inch deep. Cover the layer of peas with wet cotton, and add another layer of peas. Cork the bottle so as to be nearly air-tight, and keep it in a warm place till the plantlets have advanced in germination so far that the roots extend a short distance outside the seed-coats, or until the flame of a match will be at once extinguished when held in the mouth of the bottle.

The young plants are now active, and should be breathing if they ever breathe. Plunge a burning match into a wide-mouthed bottle of air. Remove the cork from the bottle of peas, plunge the burning match into the gas above the germinating peas, and



immediately cork the bottle again. Then pour a little lime-water in upon the peas, place your hand tightly upon the mouth of the bottle and shake the lime-water up and down through the gas in the bottle. The lime-water should become quite milky in appearance.

To interpret these facts we can only say that the little pea plants must be generating carbon dioxide, and giving it off into the air. Other seeds besides peas—sunflower seeds for instance—should be used for this experiment, at the same time, in order to confirm the results obtained with the peas.

Blow your breath through lime-water till it turns milky. Carbon dioxide gas is being generated in your body and given off into the air. It is the end-product of the process, in yourself and animals generally, which you call breathing or respiration. The similar process in plants is called respiration.

It is plain that the little pea plants do not get all this carbon dioxide from the air in the bottle, else it would whiten lime-water before the peas are put in. Just as we need oxygen *from the air* to unite with the carbon in our bodies, so do plants need oxygen from the air to unite with the carbon present in the substances of which they are composed. In this way the compounds are broken up and energy imprisoned in them is set free for use

in growth and other life-processes. It is this oxidation of carbon in our bodies—as you have learned—that keeps our bodies warm—warmer than the surrounding air; but if plants breathe much more slowly than we do, and the heat produced passes off about as fast as it is generated, the bodies of plants should not be as warm as ours. Feel a plant and see.

#### EXERCISES

1. Push one or two growing leafy shoots into a wide-mouthed bottle, held mouth down, and set the bottle with its mouth in a dish containing enough water to prevent the outside air from entering the bottle. Cover the bottle with a box, or set it in a dark closet, and leave it in darkness for several hours. Then remove the shoot with the mouth of the bottle under water. Raise the bottle quickly, turn it mouth upward, and shake lime-water up and down through it. What has occurred?

2. Is there any reason for the belief that plants are unwholesome in a bedroom at night?

N.B.—The quantity of carbon dioxide given off by a few house-plants is so small compared with what is given off by the human occupant of the room that the danger from the plants is a negligible quantity.

3. Repeat the experiment in Exercise 1, with one variation—keep the bottle containing the leafy shoot in the light for several hours, instead of in darkness. Explain the difference in the results.



### XXX. THE ABSORPTION AND TRANSPIRATION OF WATER BY PLANTS

*Material.*—Test tubes, cotton wool, potted plants in active growth.

Set a potted coleus, or some other plant with rather large leaves, in a warm room. Roll the blade of one of its leaves into a cylindrical form, and push it into a test tube without injuring the leaf-stalk or breaking it off from the stem of the plant. Then pack the mouth of the tube around the footstalk of the leaf with cotton wool, taking care not to crush the footstalk. The cotton will thus answer as a cork, and but little moisture can escape from the test tube. Let the tube incline so that a liquid would flow toward the bottom, and support it in that position so that its weight will not break or injure the leaf-stalk, cutting off communication between the blade of the leaf and the stem and root of the plant. In a short time a clear liquid will collect in drops on the inside of the test tube.

Supply the plant with water by keeping the soil fairly moist, and in a few days a considerable quantity of the liquid will have collected at the bottom of the tube. Remove the cotton stopper and the leaf from the tube, and test the liquid.

It is clear that the leaf must have been giving

off water from its blade. But why could you not see the water escaping from the leaf? It must escape in the invisible form of steam, just as perspiration from your body is invisible unless you exert yourself so actively that it collects in drops of sweat.

The giving off of water by the leaves of plants is called transpiration. It resembles the process of perspiration in yourselves; but if you try, you will find that the drops of perspiration are not nearly as pure water as the water transpired by plants.

The amount of water exhaled in one season from a field of corn or from a large forest must be very great. How is the supply kept up?

We have seen that plants need water for making starch, sugar and cellulose, that while they are living they contain free water—in their sap—and that they exhale water from their leaves quite rapidly in transpiration. It is plain that while the leaves are on the plants they must be regularly supplied with water, else they would soon become very dry. But this water is not absorbed by the leaves, for we find that they are constantly giving off water instead of taking it in. The bark on the stems and roots of plants is nearly waterproof, and keeps the plants from drying out.

The water used by plants, and that which passes off in transpiration, must be taken in through the



root-hairs which the rootlets bear in such vast numbers. As a striking evidence of this, allow a low plant, such as a primrose growing in a pot, to become so dry that the leaves are all wilted. Set the pot in a shallow vessel of water, and observe how quickly the water will reach the leaves from the roots buried in the soil.

To prove that the root-hairs really do spread from the rootlets into the soil in all directions, grow from the seed a few small plants in a pot of light soil. Empty the soil out in a mass when dry, and carefully take the plants out of the soil. You will find many particles of soil clinging to the rootlets by means of the root-hairs, to which the grains adhere.

# SECOND YEAR

---

## AUTUMN LESSONS

### I. THE CELL STRUCTURE OF PLANTS

*Material.*—Specimens of sunflower stalks and or other stems, fresh green leaves, germinating plants with root-hairs. flowers discharging pollen, a cheap magnifying glass, a sharp knife.

CUT with a sharp knife a thin section from the pith of a sunflower stalk and examine it under a magnifying glass. You will conclude from its appearance under the glass that it is made up of very minute parts, with thin walls or partitions separating them.

Indeed, if the piece of pith were sufficiently magnified it would look much like a honey-comb; and just as we give the name of cells to the little chambers which make a honey-comb, so we call those of the pith by the same name. The *cells* of the pith, however, are many times smaller.

Of course the hard woody part of the stem cannot be composed of such cells as those of the pith. If you scrape the wood with your knife-blade you will find that it will split lengthwise



into very fine threads or fibres. The fibres of the wood are also called cells, for they too are little chambers but comparatively long and very narrow, so that they resemble slender tubes closed at the end.

There are many forms of cells in plants. If you were to examine the skin of a leaf under a compound microscope, you could see the cells of which it is composed, and you would find that the pulp cells of the leaf resemble somewhat in form those of the pith of a sunflower. By scraping and splitting one of the veins of the leaf with your knife you can find the shape of the cells of which the veins are composed.

You can now see that a plant—even a **great** tree—is a mass of cells of various sizes and shapes, too small and too close together to be seen separately except with a microscope. You may picture out in your mind how a plant would look if your eyes were piercing and powerful enough to see through it, and at the same time see the many millions of cells of which it is built up.

You remember the root-hairs which you saw some time ago. Each of these hairs is a slender tube, closed at the tip, with a very thin wall extending out from a cell in the skin of the rootlet. A root-hair is only a part of a cell, for there is no wall separating it from the cell from which it sprang. Unless you use a microscope you

cannot see that part of the cell in the skin of the rootlet. It is very small, and the wall which separates it from the cells about it is too thin to be perceived by you; but the root-hair itself can be plainly seen with an ordinary magnifying glass.

A number of cells arranged together in one system are called a *tissue*; thus pith and the pulp of a leaf are one kind of tissue, the skin is another, and the veins of the leaf are composed of woody tissue. The substance of which the cell-walls of a plant are mainly formed is called *cellulose*. Cotton is nearly pure cellulose, the fibres of cotton being formed of long narrow dead cells. The wood of trees is largely of modified cellulose, the cell-walls having been thickened by the addition of a firmer, harder substance generally called *lignin*. Even the thin walls of the cells in the pulp of a leaf are composed of cellulose. So a plant-cell is a minute chamber with a wall of cellulose, which may be very thin and soft, or thickened and more or less rigid.

The little plants which we sprouted were made up of cells, but these cells must have been alive, else the plant could not have grown and could not be killed. Yes, every living plant-cell must have some living substance inside its cellulose wall. Of course the sap which we squeeze out of the cells is not alive. Nor is the leaf-green the living substance, for the uncolored as well as the



colored parts of a young plant are alive and grow. But microscopists find in every active cell a soft, glairy, colorless substance (resembling the "white" of a raw egg) which is not present in old dead cells.

This is the living substance of the cells, and is the only living substance in a plant. It is called *protoplasm*. You cannot expect to see it with the naked eye, or with a common magnifying glass, when you remember the minute size of each cell.

Are the cells of dry garden seeds dead? No; if they were the seeds could not germinate. The protoplasm in the cells of the seed-plantlet before germination must be dormant or in a resting state, yet capable of being stimulated into active life. That is what the warmth and the moisture help to do.

We can now understand how a plant grows. A plant is made up of minute cells, and, when it is growing, the number of these cells must be increasing. New cells are being formed from the older ones. This does not mean that the older ones are destroyed, but each of the cells in the growing part of the plant becomes two cells, and a cellulose wall formed across the middle separates them. Each of these two cells soon becomes as large as the parent cell which produced them and may divide in its turn.

Of course dead cells cannot divide to form new ones, nor do cells necessarily die as soon as they

cease dividing; but certainly all the dead cells now in a plant were once alive, for when they were formed from their parent cells they had living protoplasm in them.

Whenever any part of a plant begins to grow, there cell division is going on and new cells are being formed from the old ones. When a plant gets to be twice as large and heavy as it was, that means that it probably contains about twice as many cells as it did.

I should remind you that cells do not form a tissue unless they are joined together. Examine the pollen of a flower with a magnifying glass. The little grains of pollen as they are discharged from the anther are *separate* cells. The pollen of a flower, then, although made up of cells, is not a tissue.

When a grain of pollen germinates on the stigma of a flower, a *germ-cell* formed by the *internal* division of the pollen grain descends the pollen tube which penetrates an ovule (unfertilized seed). The ovule contains another germ-cell of a different sort, and here (in the ovule) the two germ-cells unite to form one new cell, called the *fertilized egg*. The union or fusion of the two germ-cells is called *fertilization*. Afterwards the egg-cell begins to divide, and cell-division continues till the egg has developed into the embryo. After resting for a time, the embryo, when placed under suitable con-



ditions, germinates, and develops into a flowering plant. So we see that every *flowering* plant begins its career as a single cell—a fertilized egg—which was formed by the fusion of two other cells.

---

## II. THE COURSE OF THE SAP IN PLANTS

*Material.*—Sunflower leaves or other leaves with stout footstalks, stems of Indian corn and of the sunflower, carrots, potatoes, short leafy branches, some young plants growing in light soil, red ink or other red dye, black ink, tumblers and wide-mouthed bottles, shallow dishes.

Set a few fresh leaves with large footstalks, such as sunflower leaves, in a bottle or tumbler containing red ink slightly diluted with water. Cut a few pieces two or three inches in length from the stems of sunflower and of Indian corn, stand them in a shallow dish containing diluted red ink about half an inch deep, and take an occasional look to see the results.

If this experiment is started in the forenoon, in the afternoon you will be able to tell through which of the tissues of the stems and leaves the ink rises, and to calculate at what rate per hour it ascended the stems. Since red ink is a solution of dye in water, this experiment will show whether substances dissolved in soil water might ascend the stems dissolved in the water absorbed by the root-hairs.

Examine the leaves after several hours, to see whether the dye remains in the tissue through which it ascended, or whether it diffuses into the other tissues.

Stand some pieces of sunflower and corn stalks, with the top end down, in red ink, and note whether the ink will travel through the stem in the opposite direction, that is, toward the root.

Cut both ends off a short carrot and a potato, and set them in a shallow dish containing ink in the bottom. Use black ink for the carrot. Interpret the results.

Set short leafy branches of poplar or of some other tree in a wide-mouthed bottle or glass jar half full of a solution of red ink or of other red dye, to find whether the dye will pass with the water from the stem into the leaves. Peel the bark off the stem for the distance of one-half an inch a little above the level of the solution, and note whether the water and dye can ascend to the leaves through the part of the stem from which the bark was removed.

We have seen that if we supply water to the roots of a plant whose leaves are wilted, the water will soon ascend and fill the cell so completely that the leaves stiffen and straighten out again. To show that most of this water is probably absorbed by the root-hairs, grow from seed, in light soil, a few plants to the height of two or three inches.



Turn the soil out of the pot, and carefully take the plants out of it. You will find that much soil clings to the rootlets by means of the root-hairs which adhere closely to the particles of soil.

It is clear that the water which ascends the stems of plants must pass from the soil through the skin of the rootlets, or through the thin walls of the root-hairs. There are evidently no openings in the roots by which solid matter can be taken into the plant. Therefore only water and substances dissolved in it can pass through the thin walls of the cells and root-hairs.

Since the whole plant is composed of cells, the watery sap must ascend the stem and leaves by diffusion from cell to cell. Similarly, the starch made in the leaves when changed into sugar must pass through the stem from cell to cell, dissolved in the watery sap, to the other parts of the plant, to be used where needed, or to be stored up in tubers, bulbs, etc. We have seen that plants use water in the *manufacture* of starch—the starch being composed of carbon and the elements of water chemically united. Here we find another use of the water in plants, for the transference of sugar and other substances from one part of the plant to another could not take place unless these substances were dissolved in the water of the sap.

### III. FERNS AND OTHER GREEN SEEDLESS PLANTS

*Material.*—Fresh specimens of ferns and other green seedless plants, such as horsetails, club-mosses, mosses, and, if obtainable, pond-scums in water.

The green spreading *fronds* of ferns are evidently leaves, but where are the stems which bear these leaves? In our ferns the stems must be concealed in the earth below the fronds. These stems are root-like in appearance, but since they bear the leaves of the ferns they must be true stems.

The footstalks of the compound fronds might be mistaken for stems, but you will notice that the divisions of the fronds are not set on the footstalk like leaves on a stem, so we must regard the whole frond, no matter how much it is divided, including the stalk which supports it, as a single leaf. The roots will be found extending from the stem into the surrounding soil.

Upon the backs of some of the fronds may be seen small dots (*sori*) made up of little spherical bodies which become plainly visible if you use an ordinary magnifying glass. A sorus would thus suggest a cluster of minute berries, partially concealed, in most ferns, by a thin membranous covering. The minute berry-like bodies are called spore cases because each one is filled with still more minute grains called spores. So a sorus is a collection of spore-cases.



Rub a dry sorus hard enough to burst the spore-cases, and you will obtain a powder the grains of which are so fine that you cannot make out their form without a microscope of considerable magnifying power. Every particle of this dust-like powder is a *spore*.

If you collect some mature spores which have been freely discharged from the spore-cases of a fern and scatter them on suitable soil where the conditions will be similar to those where ferns grow naturally, you may have the pleasure of seeing them grow into tiny green bodies which produce eggs and male cells from whose union young fern plants will develop. In greenhouses, ferns are often grown thus from the spores. Although a spore gives rise to a new plant, it is not a seed and contains no minute embryo as a seed does. Like a pollen grain, it is a single cell capable of growth.

There are other families of green flowerless plants besides ferns. The principal of these are the horse-tails, club-mosses, often called trailing pine, true mosses and algae.

The horse-tails are very familiar objects, especially in the early spring. Then these plants send up slender jointed stems, whose leaves are merely whorls of teeth surrounding every joint like a sheath. At the top of each stem is a spike or club-shaped body made up of tiny shield-shaped leaves in close contact. On the inner side of each scale are several spore-cases containing many spores. After the spores are shed the stems may give rise

to whorls of green branches, or other stems spring up and become richly branched. As in the fern, the spores grow into minute structures which produce eggs and male cells. These must unite to form a new horse-tail. The life-history of the club-mosses is similar to that of the ferns, but they differ from them in form and habit. Creeping over the ground beneath the trees of our woodlands, their slender, flexible, evergreen stems covered with short leaves are very decorative. Their spore-cases are crescent-shaped and occur singly at the bases of leaves—either the ordinary leaves or special leaves differing in form from the others and arranged in a terminal spike.

The mosses are a much more primitive group of plants, with short leafy stems. The spores are produced in solitary spore-cases, usually borne on slender leafless stalks.

Sea-weeds or marine algae grow in the sea—chiefly along the shores, but often at some distance out from land. *Fresh-water algae* are common in ponds and slow streams. They often form soft, green, stringy masses, floating in the water. Such fresh-water forms are called *pond-scums*.

#### EXERCISES

1. Make a collection of the most beautiful ferns, horse-tails, club-mosses and mosses you can find in your neighborhood. The plants may be dried between sheets of porous paper. Old newspapers answer the purpose well.

2. Find some pond-scums, take them to the school, and keep them in water for a while that all may observe them.



## IV. MUSHROOMS

*Material.*—Specimens from the woods and fields of various forms of mushrooms, including gill-bearing and pore-bearing species.

Some forms of mushrooms are known to children as toadstools. Some closely related plants are called puffballs. The common mushrooms we see growing on the ground, mostly in soil rich in humus (decaying vegetable matter), with their circular caps and erect stalks, resemble little umbrellas in form. If you examine the spreading caps, you will find the under side in some species divided into thin blade-like parts, with narrow spaces between the divisions. These divisions, which radiate from the centre, are called *gills*; and mushrooms which have them are called *gill-bearing* mushrooms.

Cut the stalk off a mature gill-bearing mushroom, place the cap, gills downward, on a piece of white paper, and cover it with a glass jar or other vessel, to prevent air currents. Before long, lines of very fine powder may be seen on the paper just below the slits between the gills. This powder is made up of the spores from which mushrooms grow, each spore being a single cell.

We see from this that the cap of the mushroom is a spore-bearing organ. The vegetative part of the mushroom is rarely observed; it may be found

by digging into the earth about the base of the stalk. It is made up of threads which spread through the earth, drawing food from decaying vegetable matter in the soil.

Edible mushrooms are grown by the cultivators of mushrooms from the underground vegetative part, which is sold under the name of mushroom *spawn*. The mushroom lives for a time in the form of spawn, then the spawn sends up a stalk with a cap on it for producing spores.

In some mushrooms the lower side of the cap is perforated with many small openings called *tubes* or *pores*, which answer the same purpose as the gills in other mushrooms.

The *pore-bearing* mushrooms are of different forms. Some species of them are common on trees. They are often quite tough and sometimes hard, and resemble little shelves or brackets fastened to the tree. These are called bracket or shelf mushrooms.

The bracket, however, is only the spore-bearing part of the mushroom. Most of the mushroom—the vegetative part—is concealed within the tree upon which it may have been feeding for a long time. Upon splitting a log which has shelf mushrooms on it you can find the vegetative part of the mushrooms within, and observe the effect on the tree. These mushrooms destroy the wood of living trees and may finally kill them. Bracket



mushrooms grow from spores which fall upon a wound in the tree, and, germinating there, grow into the tree.

Puffballs are neither gill-bearing nor pore-bearing mushrooms. The black powder which issues from the ripe ball is made up of a vast number of spores, each of which is capable of producing a new puffball.

Some mushrooms are good for food, but there are so many poisonous ones that it is not at all safe for inexperienced people to eat those of their own selection.

Mushrooms are often white, but many kinds are brightly colored. They contain no leaf-green, and so we know that they must obtain their food from material prepared by other plants. Many of them live on the decaying bodies of plants buried in the soil; others, such as the bracket mushrooms of trees, obtain their nourishment from living plants.

#### EXERCISES

1. Make a collection of mushrooms from the fields and woods, noting at the same time where they flourish best.
2. Draw two or three mushrooms of different forms.
3. Try to grow some mushrooms from spawn or from spores, or from both.

## V. MOULDS

*Material.*—Small pieces of bread, cheese, boiled potato, lemon, fresh leaves, glass jars (self-sealers), plates, tumblers, flower-pots or bowls.

Place a boiled potato, a piece of bread saturated with water, a dry piece of bread, a thick slice of lemon, some damp leaves, a piece of cheese, respectively, on plates and invert a tumbler over each. Prepare duplicates of some of these, and place a flower-pot or bowl over each tumbler in order to exclude the light. Set the whole in a warm place.

Put a boiled potato and a piece of bread separately in glass jars with air-tight covers. Place the jars open, and their covers—rubber band and all—in a pan of cold water, and bring the water to the boiling point. Allow the water to boil for a while, then quickly turn the jars with mouth obliquely downward, allow the water to drain out, and promptly put the covers on the jars before turning them mouth upward. Screw the cover down, and keep the jars in a warm place. Cover one of the jars to shut out the light.

Look from time to time to see whether any new growths appear on any of the substances under the tumblers or in the jars. Note whether the new growths are all alike, or whether they differ in form, in color, or in other ways.



After a time you will see on some of the materials, perhaps on the bread, a beautiful white growth, apparently composed of fine fibres or threads. Soon very small round black bodies, resembling black pin-heads, will appear upon the white threads. These will probably increase greatly in number, until the whole mass is speckled with black. This white growth which bears the black specks is a *mould*, and the little black balls are full of fine powder.

You will probably find that no moulds have developed on the bread in the sealed jars, but if you sift upon it a little of the powder from the moulds under the tumblers, and cover the jars loosely, you should soon see an extensive growth of moulds. Try whether the moulds grow better when the jar is sealed tightly, or when the cover is left slightly loose.

Every particle of the fine powder from which moulds grow is a spore. A mould spore is a single cell which is capable of developing into a mould plant.

The species of moulds just referred to is one of the black moulds. You will probably find other moulds in which the spores are bluish or greenish in color. These belong to the blue moulds.

Since moulds do not contain leaf-green they cannot use carbon dioxide and water to make the starch and other carbohydrates which are used in

building up living matter and cell-walls. This means that moulds cannot make their food out of inorganic matter as green plants can. Like animals, they must use food which has been already prepared by green plants.

The moulds which you have just examined use the starches and other substances in the bread on which they grow. If you examine bread on which they have been living for some time, you will see that threads of the mould have spread through the bread and are absorbing food, breaking down the bread and making it decay.

#### EXERCISES

1. Show whether moulds are flowering or flowerless plants.
2. Find whether moulds grow better in light or in darkness—in a cold room or in a warm room.
3. Try whether moulds will grow on dry substances.
4. Explain how the moulds came to grow on the substances under the tumblers, although you had sowed no mould spores there.
5. How can mould spores be killed, and their growth prevented?
6. Heat a piece of boiled potato in a jar of boiling water, pour off the water, sprinkle dust from the floor on the potato, and cover the jar. Set the jar in a warm place, and account for the growth of moulds on it, if any appear.
7. Find whether mould spores are floating about in the air.
8. Remove the cover from a can of fruit and replace it at once. After a few days, compare it with a jar which had been unsealed.



## VI. YEASTS

*Material.*—A fresh cake of yeast, a cup of molasses, a little wheat flour, granulated sugar, lime-water, wide-mouthed bottles of different sizes, test tubes or homeopathic vials, a soda-water bottle, wooden test-sticks, a spirit lamp.

You have learned that fungi, like animals, must depend upon food prepared by green plants. When digesting such foods, they often produce waste substances which are sometimes used by man. The most familiar of these is alcohol. Both the ancient Egyptians and the children of Israel knew how to make wine from the sugary juices of grapes and how to prepare "leavened bread." They did not, however, know that both processes result from the growth of plants which you will now study.

Stir up half of a fresh yeast cake in a tumbler of water. The other half of the cake, if needed, may be used in the following experiments. Mix in a large bottle half a cup of molasses with about seven or eight times its volume of water.

Make a small ball of dough—not too soft—by mixing a little wheat flour with water into which you have stirred yeast. Make two other balls of dough, using water without yeast in one, and some of the molasses solution with yeast in the other. Drop the three lumps of dough into three wide-mouthed bottles. The dough should occupy about one-third of each bottle.

Cork the bottles loosely and set them in a warm place (near a stove or a radiator) for several hours, until the dough expands in one or more of them to double its original volume. Try whether a match will burn in the mouth of each bottle. Test for carbon dioxide by tipping the open mouth of each bottle over the mouth of another bottle containing a little lime-water, and then shaking the lime-water through the bottle. Close the bottle tightly with the hand while shaking the lime-water through it. Observe the smell given off by the risen dough.

Fill several test tubes or vials one-third full of molasses solution, add a few drops of the mixture of yeast and water to each, cork the tubes or vials, and set the whole in a warm place. Watch the action which soon sets in, and after some hours go through the motion of emptying the gas above the solution into a two-ounce bottle with one-third of an inch of lime-water in the bottom. Close the bottle and shake the lime-water through it.

If you do not get a decided result at first, repeat the experiment, using another tube or vial. Note the smell given off from the solutions containing the yeast.

Fill a pint or a half-pint bottle half full of a fairly sweet solution of granulated sugar (cane sugar), add a tablespoonful or two of the mixture of yeast and water to each. Cork the bottles, not



quite air-tight; set them in a warm place, and note and account for the results. The *beery* smell from one of the solutions is due to the presence of alcohol, formed by the action of the yeast. Try whether this beery smell is given off from the test tubes or vials containing molasses solution and yeast.

Put some of the frothy scum which collects on the molasses solution in which the yeast is working into another bottle containing a molasses solution. Keep the solution warm and explain the result.

Fill a soda-water bottle two-thirds full of molasses solution, add yeast, cork *tightly*, and leave the bottle in a warm place till the cork disappears. Explain this circumstance.

Boil a molasses solution containing yeast, and observe whether the yeast acts as before. Explain the result.

When yeast is studied under a microscope of considerable magnifying power, we find that it is made up of small cells, usually rounded in form, which multiply rapidly under favorable conditions by new cells budding off from the older ones. The new cells readily separate from the parent cells, and grow to be as large as they.

A yeast cake is just a mass of yeast cells stuck together. Each yeast cell is a minute plant.

Since yeasts contain no leaf-green, and live, like mushrooms and moulds, on material prepared by

other plants, they are included with the bacteria, the moulds and mushrooms in the great group of *fungi*. A yeast is a budding fungus.

The action of yeast in producing alcohol and carbon dioxide from sugar is called alcoholic or vinous fermentation.

#### EXERCISES

1. Try whether yeast will live and multiply in a mixture of starch (raw or boiled) and water.

2. Find whether yeast will thrive in a cold place.

3. (a) What two substances are produced by yeast in dough, and in a molasses solution? (b) From what do these two substances seem to be produced?

4. What caused the cavities in the dough which was raised by the yeast? How can these cavities be made permanent?

5. What two substances are expelled by the heat when dough which has been raised by yeast is baked in bread-making?

6. Why is yeast used in making bread?

---

#### VII. BACTERIA AND THEIR WAYS

*(Look over this article to see what material is required for the experiments)*

You have learned that mushrooms and moulds feed upon the bodies of other plants, and often cause their death and hasten their decay; but it has been found by means of the microscope that the putrefaction and decay of organic matter is largely due to minute, one-celled plants called



*bacteria* (singular *bacterium*). These minute plants are so small that only a high-power microscope will magnify them sufficiently to render them visible to us; indeed most of them must be magnified about 1,000 times before we can see the little cells, each of which is a single bacterium. Although we cannot see the individual bacteria without a microscope, we can observe them in masses, called *colonies*, with the naked eye.

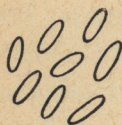
Press a little hay into the bottom of a bottle, fill the bottle up with water, set it aside in a warm place for a few days. A gelatinous scum will form on the surface of the water. This scum is a mass of bacteria. If you were to place a speck of this scum in a drop of water, under a powerful microscope, you might see great numbers of bacteria lying or swimming about in the drop.

Cut a damp cooked potato into slices about half an inch thick, and then cut the slices into cylinders of such diameter that they can be dropped into a small wide-mouthed bottle. Put one or two cylinders into each of five bottles, and plug the mouth of each bottle rather tightly with a stopper made of cotton wool. This will prevent the entrance of bacteria, while not excluding the air.

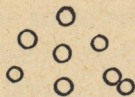
Procure an enamelled pail or a deep basin with a cover. Invert in the bottom of it a low dish with a flat bottom which has been perforated with small holes. Pour in some water, and set *four* of the







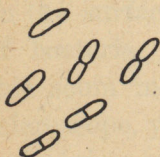
(a)



(b)



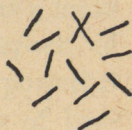
(c)



(d)



(e)



(f)

## FORMS AND STATES OF BACTERIA

*(All greatly magnified)*

(a) ROD-SHAPED BACTERIA (BACILLI). (b) SPHERICAL BACTERIA (COCCI). (c) SPIRAL BACTERIA (SPIRILLA). (d) BACTERIA MULTIPLYING BY FISSION. (e) BACTERIA FORMING SPORES (INSIDE). (f) THE BACTERIA OF CONSUMPTION (BACILLUS TUBERCULOSIS).

bottles on the perforated bottom of the dish, cover the pail or basin, set it on a hot stove, and boil the water for thirty minutes. The heat of the steam should kill most of the bacteria that may have been on the potatoes or elsewhere in the vessel. The process of killing the bacteria by heat is called *sterilization*, and the apparatus we used in this instance may be called a steam *sterilizer*.

In order to find whether all the bacteria are killed, leave the bottles in a warm place for twenty-four hours, and steam three of them again for thirty minutes. Wait another day and steam two of them for the third time. Label all the bottles to show how often each was steamed. Put them back into the vessel and keep them in a warm, dark place near a stove or a radiator.

Look at the bottles from time to time; but of course do not remove the cotton stoppers. You will probably soon see moulds growing on the potato in one of the bottles. Quite likely there will be bacteria growing there as well, but these you cannot see. It is probable, too, that signs of decay will appear on one or two of the other pieces of potato on which no moulds develop. A slimy growth may appear on the surface, which may gradually spread. This is due to the growth of bacteria on the potato.

Hot steam will kill most bacteria in their



ordinary condition, in a short time, but it has been found that many bacteria form *spores* which will withstand the heat of boiling water for a long time. If bacterial decay takes place in any of the bottles which were steamed once, it is due to the development of spores which were not killed by the heat.

Note whether either moulds or bacteria grow on the potatoes which were steamed two or three times. If not, account for the fact.

You may next inoculate a slice of sterilized potato in a sterilized bottle with bacteria from the hay infusion. Take a long needle or a hat-pin and sterilize it by passing it several times through the flame of a spirit lamp. *As soon as the needle is cool*, dip it into the film on the surface of the hay infusion. Hold the sterilized bottle containing the potato nearly horizontal. Remove the stopper, draw the point of the needle once across the surface of the potato, and replace the stopper at once. Expose another slice to the air, by removing the stopper from the bottle for five minutes. Observe these two cases carefully, note and explain the results.

Sterilize some water by boiling it in an enamelled cup. As soon as the water is cool, with a sterilized needle take a small drop from the surface of the hay infusion and stir it in the water. Sterilize the needle again; dip it into the water and touch the

sterilized potato at a few points with the point of the needle. Plug the bottle immediately with sterilized cotton wool and set it in a warm place, not in direct sunlight. Watch to see what the result will be. If you used water enough the bacterial growth at each spot probably came from a single bacterium. The infected spot, although quite small, will contain a whole colony of bacteria, numbering many thousands, for bacteria in the active state multiply with wonderful rapidity. Each bacterium being a single cell divides in two to form two bacteria. This division, under favorable conditions, takes place in about half an hour, and if kept up for a day at this rate one bacterium would increase to many millions. Make a calculation of the exact number.

The colonies of bacteria sometimes differ in color. This means probably that they belong to different species. Some species of bacteria may be distinguished by the color, shape and appearance of their colonies. The individual bacteria of different species differ in size and form, but of course this cannot be seen without a microscope.

While some bacteria aid in the decay of dead animals and plants, others attack living beings and thus cause many diseases. Diphtheria, tuberculosis, typhoid fever, and many other diseases are due to the growth of bacteria in the body.

Some bacteria like those of pus and of erysipelas



affect only limited portions of the body. Others may themselves become widely distributed. Sometimes poisonous substances formed by the bacteria, as in diphtheria, may spread through the body. Scientific men have found and are still trying to find out ways of killing the bacteria, or of counteracting their poisons, without killing the persons suffering from the diseases caused by them.

Bacteria are often called *germs* or *microbes*. Germ diseases can be transferred from one person to another. The disease germs may pass from a diseased person to another through the air or by contact.

Disease-producing bacteria are frequently found in water and in milk. In case of suspicion, it is wise to sterilize the water before drinking by boiling it. The milk should be heated to 155° Fahr. for twenty minutes and then cooled. This process, called *pasteurizing*, will kill the disease-producing bacteria in the milk.

If we keep our bodies clean and pure and our health vigorous, we are much less liable to be attacked by the bacteria of disease. Cleanly habits, enough but not too much good food, daily exercise in the open air, and well-lighted and ventilated rooms in which to work and sleep, all contribute to protect us from the attacks of these dangerous germs, and to fit the body to resist them if they do find a lodgment.

But we must not forget that many bacteria are useful or at least harmless. The bacteria of decay are useful in removing the dead bodies of plants and animals. The soil contains great numbers of bacteria which are of service in preparing food for the higher plants. Some bacteria cause fermentations, such as acetic fermentation, by which beer, wine or cider is converted into vinegar, and lactic fermentation, by which the sugar of milk is converted into lactic acid. Bacteria help to ripen cheese and impart to it an agreeable flavor, and in many other ways they play a useful part in the economy of nature.

#### EXERCISES

1. Make a collection of specimens from the home and from the fields and woods illustrating the work of bacteria.
2. After a bottle containing a solution of molasses in water has undergone alcoholic fermentation, set it aside uncorked till the solution smells like vinegar (acetic acid solution). Test with litmus paper. Account for the change, and point out what became of the alcohol.



## WINTER LESSONS

### VIII. THE DOMESTIC ANIMALS OF THE HOME AND FARM

ALL our domesticated animals once lived the independent life of wild creatures, maintaining the struggle for existence alone by their own powers of self-preservation.

The dog and the cat were domesticated thousands of years ago, probably before there was any written history, and while man was still a savage. The dog is believed to have at first resembled a wolf or jackal, preying perhaps in packs upon the less aggressive wild animals of the forest and the open plain. He has been greatly changed during his long association with man, and has developed traits which seem to be quite human, such as his evident pleasure at being praised. Indeed, in his warm response to the affection of his master, and his faithfulness to him even in adversity, he displays qualities only too rare among men. In earlier ages the dog was no doubt of great service to man in safeguarding him against his enemies, and assisting him in the chase.

The cat retains more of the original savage characteristics of her wild ancestors than does the

dog. The cat has done considerable service in ridding man of meaner enemies, such as mice and rats.

In these days, however, dogs and cats are in general not so necessary to us. Indeed, in many communities cats are far too numerous. They destroy large numbers of song birds, and it is probable that they often carry the germs of infectious diseases in their frequent visits from house to house.

Our domestic cows and oxen are descended from the wild cattle which once roamed over the plains of the Old World, as did the buffaloes not long ago over our western plains. During many generations they have contributed largely, in food and clothing, to supply the needs of the tribes and nations who domesticated or adopted them. The ox has done an immense amount of work for man—hauling the cart, dragging the plough, and threshing out the grain.

Many breeds of cattle have been developed in different parts of the world. Some breeds have been specially adapted for producing milk; others have been bred chiefly for beef.

The sheep was originally a mountain animal, active and sure-footed, able to leap from cliff to cliff and scale the mountain peaks. Wild sheep are still found in mountainous regions in both hemispheres. Sheep formed a large part of the



wealth of the pastoral tribes of Asia ages ago. In cold-temperate countries their wool is indispensable for clothing, and their flesh forms a large part of our animal food.

The horse, the noblest of our domestic animals, was tamed in very early times by savage peoples. He has long been employed, both in peace and war, as a source of speed and of power.

The ancestors of the domesticated horse wandered over the plains of the Eastern Continent, but it is quite doubtful whether the original wild horse still exists. It is generally believed that the modern wild horses of Asia are descended from domestic animals which have escaped from the control of man.

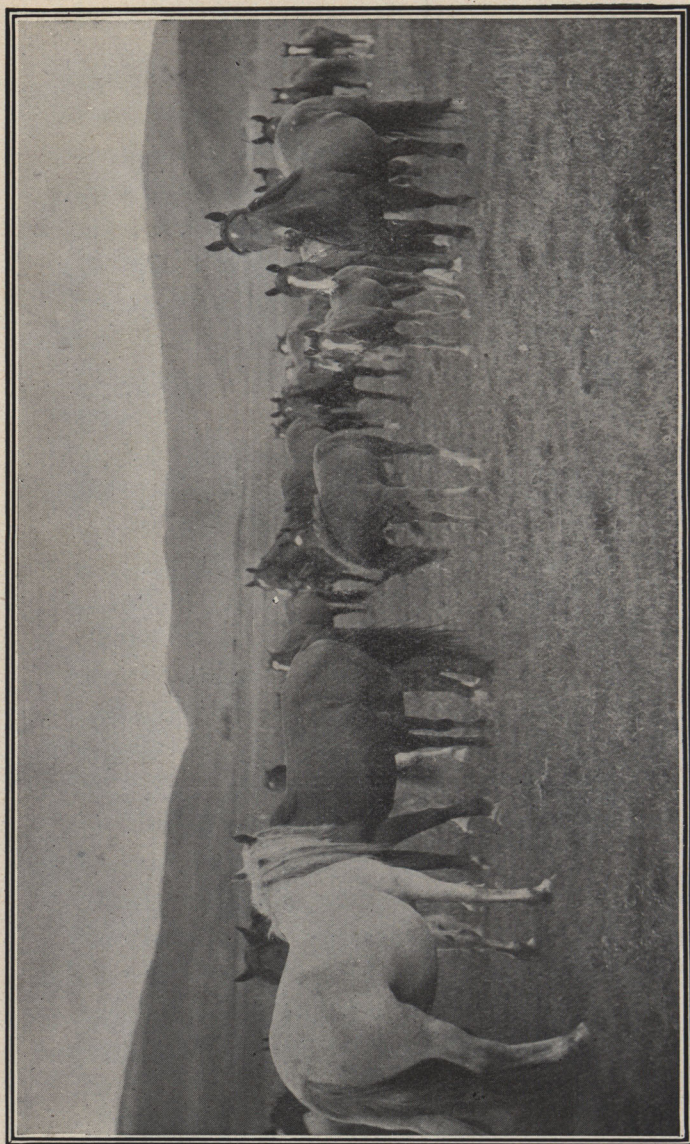
There were no horses either wild or tame in America at the time of its discovery by Columbus. Geologists tell us, however, that there were horses in America long ages ago, but that they all died out. The American horses of the present day are descended from those brought across the Atlantic since the year 1492.

Breeding for speed has given us the race-horse, while breeding for power has developed the draught-horse at the other extreme. Horses are now very commonly used for general farm work, taking the place, as a beast of burden, formerly held by the ox.

The useful but much despised pig was once a

bl





HAPPY ON THE RANGE.

*Reproduced by permission of C.P.R. Colonization Department.*

ferocious beast—a wild boar—in the forests and jungles of the Old World. As a domestic animal, all that is required of the pig is to grow fast and fat, on such food as its owner permits it to have. It has accordingly degenerated in self-reliance and in intelligence.

The species from which our domestic fowls are derived can still be found in the wild state. The domestic hen came from a species of wild fowl which still inhabits Northern India and other parts of Eastern Asia. Our tame ducks are descended from the wild duck, and the domestic goose from one or more species of the migratory wild geese of the Eastern Continent. The turkey is a native of America and is still found wild in the southern part of the United States and further south. The domestic turkey is probably derived mainly from the Mexican variety of the wild turkey. This fowl was introduced into Europe soon after the discovery of Mexico.

**The Care of Domestic Animals.** Since man deprived the domestic animals of their wild freedom, they have largely lost their powers of self-defence and their habits of self-reliance. They have become dependent on man for protection, food and shelter, and frequently suffer from their owner's neglect to provide for them. This is not only cruel on the part of their owner, but is always a cause of financial loss to him. Animals which are well



fed and cared for will always give their master a more satisfactory return.

All the domestic animals—like human beings—require nourishing food containing a sufficient amount of carbohydrates and proteins (not forgetting enough common salt to supply the natural craving of the animals), pure air to breathe, pure water to drink, clean bodies, exercise, and a temperature at which they can be comfortable. Our northern winters are so cold that they all need more or less shelter from its severities. The buildings provided for their shelter in winter should be clean, well-ventilated, dry, free from draughts, and well lighted from windows.

It is very important that the animals should not be kept too warm. Stables for cattle and horses should be kept in winter at a temperature ranging from about 45° to 55° Fahr.

Cattle as well as horses should be groomed regularly with brush or comb, and their stables should be provided with straw or other litter for bedding. Sheep demand greater freedom than cattle, and their warmer coats protect them better from severe cold. They may be allowed to run freely in and out of their sheds, except at night.

Poultry-houses should be of light construction. The same conditions as to draughts, ventilation, light, cleanliness and dryness apply to them as to the stables for cattle. In cold weather poultry,

like other animals, require a warmer place in which to sleep than they need for exercise and free movement, but the temperature should never be above the point of comfort.

Hens are fed mostly on grain—wheat, corn, and oats—but also require some softer food, and also green food. In *fattening* fowls, food for the morning meal may be prepared by boiling together clean vegetables of nearly any kind, and stirring in corn meal, bran, ground oats and ground meat, with a little salt—till the whole mass is quite firm and dry. Fresh clover makes good green food. Bones and meat shaved in a bone-cutter make a valuable addition to the food of laying hens, but must not be fed too often or in too large quantity. An ounce to each hen is enough at a time. Poultry require pure fresh water (*warm* in winter) and gravel or sharp grit, as regularly as they need food.

The same principles as to care and food apply in the management of all kinds of fowls; but in carrying out these principles we must keep in mind the natural characteristics and habits of the different species.

Poultry-keeping is very profitable if well managed. The necessary knowledge and skill can only be gained by experience, but the reading of good books and newspaper articles on the subject will shorten the time needed in acquiring experience, and lessen the loss due to mistakes.



We must not forget to mention our domesticated insect, the honey bee. These busy little creatures do well in favorable localities, when under the care of someone who will take the trouble to study their habits and their needs.

---

### IX. THE COMPOSITION AND CARE OF MILK

*Material*—A pint or two of milk, a sample of milk sugar, a little extract of rennet, hydrochloric acid, vinegar, litmus paper, a muslin strainer, tumblers, bottles, spoons, enamelled cups, a spirit lamp.

You do not remember it, but during the earliest weeks or months of your life your food consisted entirely, or almost entirely, of milk. Indeed the young of all mammals—including man as well as those animals next below human beings in the scale of existence—are fed on milk alone for some time after birth.

It is evident, then, that milk must be a nourishing food, and that it must contain all the substances necessary for building up bone, muscle, nerves, brain, and the other tissues of the animal body. Let us try to find by experiment some of the substances of which milk is made up.

Set some fresh milk aside in a narrow bottle for a few hours until it separates into two layers. The layer which forms at the top is called *cream*

Compare, by actual measurements, the depth of the cream with that of the milk below it. Skim off the cream. The milk remaining after the removal of the cream is called *skim milk*. Try which feels more oily—the skim milk or the cream—and which will give the better oil spot on paper.

We see that the greater part of the oil in milk has risen toward the surface and is now in the cream. The oil in the milk is not dissolved there, but exists as very small solid globules which cannot be seen without a microscope. The oil of milk is called *butter fat*.

You know that oils are lighter than water, and you can easily show by shaking any oil up with water that it will not dissolve in the water, but will soon rise to the top when the water becomes still. This explains why the globules of fat rise to the top in the milk. They are not dissolved like the other solids in the milk, and being lighter than water they tend to rise. The cream, however, is not pure fat. It is only milk which is very much richer in fat than the skim milk, and it contains a less amount of the other constituents of the milk.

When we agitate the cream in a churn the constant motion causes the globules of fat to stick together and form grains of butter. The butter is taken out of the churn when the grains



get to be about as large as wheat grains. The part of the cream which remains after the butter is taken out is called buttermilk. One hundred pounds of good average milk should yield about 20 lbs. of cream, and 20 lbs. of cream should yield about  $4\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of butter.

The butter itself is not pure fat, but contains in small proportion all the other substances found in milk. The buttermilk should contain very little fat, but all the other constituents of the original milk are represented in it. Buttermilk is a nourishing and very digestible food.

Heat a little milk in a cup or a test tube till a skin forms over the surface. You can recall the fact that the protein dissolved in potato juice was solidified by heating the juice. Similarly the protein in milk is solidified (coagulated) by heat. The tough skin formed on the milk by heating it is not pure protein, however, for some fat and other solids of the milk are entangled with it.

Warm a tumbler of ripened milk till its temperature is about that of the human body, and add enough extract of rennet to curdle it. The substance which was solidified (coagulated) by the rennet is called *casein*. Casein is the principal protein in milk. The white curd or clot, however, is not composed of casein alone, for when the casein coagulated, the fat and another protein, albumin, were caught or entangled in the clot,

as well as a portion of the other substances in milk.

Squeeze the liquid out of the clotted milk through a thin cloth into a bowl or cup. This liquid is called *whey*. The curd in the cloth, if properly pressed and cured, would be *cheese*.

Taste the whey and evaporate some of it very slowly to dryness. The whey has a very watery appearance. Catch in a cold tumbler some of the vapor which escapes during the evaporation, and identify it by touch and taste. You will find that whey is mostly water, and since the water in the whey was first in the milk, milk must consist chiefly of water. Indeed seven-eighths of milk by weight is water.

But what makes new milk sweet? You may call the sweet substance *milk-sugar*, and since most of the sugar remains in the whey, milk-sugar is obtained by the evaporation of whey. Find whether milk-sugar is more or less sweet than ordinary sugar.

Set some fresh milk aside in a warm place till it curdles; then taste it, and test it with litmus paper. The acid which formed in the milk is called *lactic acid*. It is formed from the milk-sugar through the action of a kind of bacterium. Try whether hydrochloric acid and vinegar (dilute acetic acid) will coagulate the casein as lactic acid does.

Heat a piece of curd in a metal dish or a spoon



until all the material which will evaporate or burn has disappeared. The remainder is mostly the ash or mineral matter of the milk. You may not be able to burn out all the charcoal, and therefore the ash will look black. The ash of milk is made up of various salts, one of which is phosphate of lime (calcium phosphate), which is the principal constituent of the bones of animals.

A great many kinds of bacteria are liable to get into milk and multiply rapidly there. Some of these produce changes in the milk which spoil it for drinking and for the making of butter and cheese. Some disease-producing bacteria multiply rapidly in milk if they gain admission, and render it very dangerous to drink.

It is possible, however, to secure a regular supply of good clean milk. The cows must be free from disease. They must be kept in a healthy condition by good food and intelligent care. The utmost cleanliness is indispensable. Their stables should be well ventilated and well lighted. They should have enough pure water to drink. They should be brushed regularly, but not at milking-time, as the dust contains many forms of bacteria. Less dust, and therefore fewer bacteria, will fall into the milk if the udder and adjoining parts are wiped with a damp cloth just before the cow is milked.

The room and all the vessels in which the milk

is kept must be scrupulously clean. Wherever there is dust, dirt or decay, there are bacteria. All the vessels used in holding or transferring the milk should be thoroughly washed with warm water and soap after being used and then scalded with hot water before they are dried. The same thorough cleanliness must be observed throughout the processes of cheese-making and butter-making.

Everyone who sells or uses milk and its products should keep fully informed on the methods by which they may reach the table in the best condition. The details of these methods are given in books and bulletins on dairying.

#### EXERCISE

Heat a few crumbs of dry cheese in a test tube while holding, by means of a wire, in the mouth of the tube, a piece of damp red litmus paper. Account for the change of color. (See pp. 73 and 74.)

---

### X. A LESSON ON LIMESTONE

*Material.*—Spirit lamps, dilute hydrochloric (muriatic) acid, lime-water, a little unslacked lime, red litmus paper, test tubes, wide-mouthed bottles, knives or pointed pieces of steel, fine iron wire, wooden test sticks, small bowls, a cheap balance.

Each member of the class should be supplied with a few small fragments of limestone, and one larger piece. If ordinary limestone cannot be obtained in the locality, waste marble will answer, since marble is a variety of limestone.

Try whether limestone is hard enough to scratch glass or soft enough to be easily scratched with a knife. Notice its streak, that is, the color of its powder. That is found by simply scratching it



with something which has a hard point. A little powder is left lying in the groove thus made.

Put a drop of hydrochloric acid on the stone. If it is really limestone, bubbles of gas will arise from it wherever the acid touches it. These properties will enable you to distinguish limestone of any variety from other minerals.

Procure a piece of fine iron or steel wire (florist's wire), and bend one end of it into the form of a catch to hold a *very small thin* fragment of limestone. Hold this bit of limestone, by means of the wire, in the hottest part of the flame of a spirit lamp, and keep it glowing there for about five minutes, or till the thinnest part of it looks white and lustreless when cool. Observe that neither the limestone, nor the white substance produced from it by the heat, will burn. When it becomes cool, drop the fragment from the wire upon a piece of red litmus paper, and wet it and the paper with a drop of water. You will soon notice a decided change of color in the paper.

Try whether a piece of limestone which has not been heated will act on the litmus in this manner; also try a bit of lime.

You will find that the white powdery substance produced by heating the limestone resembles lime in its physical properties, and acts on damp red litmus paper as lime does, from which we may conclude with some certainty that the dull white

substance is lime. So by heating a piece of limestone we have obtained a little *lime*.

Put a teaspoonful of small fragments of limestone into a test tube or a small bottle. Add a little water to the limestone and observe whether any visible effect is produced. Pour the water off, and add enough dilute hydrochloric acid to cause an active bubbling. Hold the test tube or bottle so that the gas as it issues may fall, if heavier than air, into a small wide-mouthed bottle.

Since a burning stick is at once extinguished by the gas which sank into the bottle, and lime-water, when shaken through it, is turned white or milky in appearance, it is evident that the gas which is set free by the acid is *carbon dioxide*. Since hydrochloric acid, as its name implies, is made up of the elements hydrogen and chlorine, this carbon dioxide must have come out of the limestone.

Since by heating limestone we get lime out of it, and by treating limestone with hydrochloric acid we set carbon dioxide free from it, we conclude that limestone contains the elements of both lime and carbon dioxide.

We know the elements of carbon dioxide, but not those of lime; so we will try to find the composition of lime. Break into powder a small piece of lime, and add enough hydrochloric acid to dissolve it entirely or partly. Make, at the end of a fine iron wire, a close coil large enough to contain



a drop of the solution, and hold the drop in the flame of the spirit lamp. You should obtain a red flame color.

Note that a drop of the acid in which no lime has been dissolved will not color the flame red; therefore the red color must be due to something in the lime. The substance in the lime which produces the red flame color is called *calcium*. It has been found to be a metal somewhat resembling silver.

But lime is evidently not composed entirely of calcium, for lime is a dull, crumbly substance without a metallic lustre, bearing no resemblance to a metal.

We have seen that lime will not burn any more than carbon dioxide will, and the reason has been found by chemists to be the same. Carbon dioxide will not burn, that is, will not unite with the oxygen of the air, because the carbon in it is already chemically united with oxygen, and so lime will not burn because the calcium in it is already united with oxygen. As lime is a compound of calcium and oxygen, its chemical name is *calcium oxide*.

Limestone, then, is made up of calcium oxide and carbon dioxide, that is, of the elements calcium, carbon and oxygen. Hence the chemical name of limestone is *calcium carbonate*. The first word of this name indicates the metal, the first

part of the second word the carbon, and the ending, *ate*, the third element, oxygen.

Limestone is frequently called carbonate of lime, because it is a carbonate which, when heated, yields lime. The lime of commerce, put up in casks, is obtained by heating some form of limestone—carbonate of lime—in a large furnace called a lime-kiln.

Weigh, or balance on a scale, a lump of lime in the bottom of a bowl. Soak the lump of unslacked lime (quicklime) in water until it ceases to give off bubbles of air from its pores, then promptly replace it in the bowl. The lime will soon become quite hot, but neither free hydrogen nor free oxygen is given off, as you can prove with a test stick.

Allow the mass to become cool and perfectly dry. You will find that this dry slacked lime weighs more than the lump of unslacked lime did.

Since neither the hydrogen nor the oxygen of the water was given off, the lime must have chemically united with some or all of the water itself, that is, with both elements of the water—thus increasing in weight. Water-slacked lime, then, is composed of lime and water chemically united. It is therefore called *calcium hydrate*. You can see that this name indicates the three elements in the water-slacked lime.



Shake a spoonful or two of the dry calcium hydrate through a bottle of water, and let the mixture stand till the water becomes clear. Taste the clear liquid and test it with red litmus paper.

The taste and the change in the color of the litmus indicate that the water has a *base* dissolved in it. This base can be none other than the calcium hydrate, part of which must have dissolved in the water while the rest settled, as you see, to the bottom, because there was not water enough to dissolve it all. The clear solution of calcium hydrate (water-slacked lime) in water is called *lime-water*.

Dissolve a little limestone, lime and water-slacked lime, separately, in hydrochloric acid, and take a flame test in each case. You will always obtain the same flame color. We have said that the metal to which this color is due is called calcium, but you have not seen, and cannot see, the calcium in these three substances, because in each it is chemically united with one or two other elements.

#### EXERCISES

1. What invisible substance passes off into the air when you heat limestone intensely? Give a reason for your answer.
2. Why will limestone not burn?
3. Which weighs more, the limestone or the lime which may be obtained from it? Why?

## XI. THE SOLID CONSTITUENTS OF THE SOIL

*Material.*—Fine garden soil, black peaty soil or leaf-mould, a pail or basin, wide-mouthed bottles, spirit lamps, lime-water, pieces of glass, lamp chimneys, cotton wool. Specimens of saltpetre (nitrate of potash) and of nitrate of soda.

Put about a tablespoonful of fine garden soil into a wide-mouthed bottle. Add water and mix the soil and water together by stirring. Pour off the muddy water into a large vessel, mix more water with the residue left in the bottle, and pour off the muddy water again. Repeat this process until the water which you pour off is nearly clear.

Let the large vessel stand for several days until the muddy water becomes clear. Pour off the clear water, and set the vessel in a warm place till the sediment becomes dry. Also set aside the bottle in which the water and the soil were mixed, until the part of the soil which remained in the bottle is dry.

Upon comparing the two parts, into which you separated the soil by means of the water—that is, the portion in the bottle and the portion in the large vessel—you will find one much coarser and harsher to the touch than the other. The coarser gritty material resembles sand; the finer looks like impure clay. If your sample of soil yields about equal weights of sand and clay, you



may call the soil a *loam*. If the sand is much heavier than the clay, the soil was a *sandy loam*; but if the clay was considerably heavier than the sand, you had a sample of a *clay loam*.

Pure clay, however, is white, as you may see it in clay pipes and other articles made of white clay. Probably the clay you obtained from the garden soil looks quite dark. If you place a small piece of this dark clay or of leaf-mould in an iron spoon or in a small coil of wire, and heat it in the flame of a spirit lamp, you will find that it will glow as a piece of charcoal would do, and that the black substance slowly burns away, leaving the residue grayish in color.

If you could collect the gas produced by the burning of this dark substance, you would find that carbon dioxide is produced. Both the dark color and the manner in which the substance burns indicates that it contains carbon.

This dark substance which is so abundant in some soils as to make them nearly black is called *humus*. You will observe that it is most evident in soils where large quantities of vegetable matter have been slowly decaying in damp places, as in woods and boggy lands. Humus is largely supplied to gardens and cultivated fields in the form of barnyard manure. This manure is simply vegetable matter—hay, grain, etc.—which the animals did not assimilate.

It must be remembered, however, that humus does not consist entirely of the carbon of the decaying plants. It contains in some proportion the other elements of the carbohydrates and the proteids of which plants are mainly composed. You have not forgotten that carbohydrates consist of carbon, hydrogen and oxygen, and that proteids contain, besides these three elements, two others, nitrogen and sulphur. Some proteids also contain phosphorus. Compounds of phosphorus, called phosphates, are, therefore, necessary constituents of every fertile soil, as also are those compounds of sulphur called sulphates.

The humus in the soil is one source whence the growing plants obtain the nitrogen which they need for making proteids. The higher plants, we are told, cannot use the nitrogen of the humus, nor the free nitrogen of the air. The nitrifying bacteria found in all good soils render the nitrogen of the humus available to the higher plants by using it to form nitrates. The nitrates being soluble in water are absorbed by the root-hairs of the higher plants, and the nitrogen of these nitrates is used by the plant in the manufacture of proteins, such as albumin, gluten and legumin.

Examine the dry sand you obtained from the soil. You will find that it is a mixture of different minerals. The commonest mineral in sand is a



very hard one, called quartz. It is usually white and opaque—when it is called milky quartz—but often it is colorless and transparent, resembling glass but harder. Indeed it will not only scratch window glass, but it is harder than ordinary steel; so your knife will not cut or scratch it.

Try whether you can find any of this hard mineral in the sand. Quite likely you will find other minerals as well. The yellow and red colors you notice in soils are usually due to the presence of iron rust, which is an oxide of iron. A very small amount of this oxide of iron in a mineral or in a soil will impart to it a reddish or yellowish color.

Next examine the clay. It is not pure clay at all, else it would be white. It was pointed out before that it probably contains more or less humus, but humus is vegetable matter. If you could test the particles of clay separately you would probably find more minerals in the clay than in the sand.

Drop a little hydrochloric acid on the dry clay and on the sand. If bubbles of gas are set free in large amount you should put some of the soil into a test tube or a small bottle, treat it with the acid, and empty the gas into a bottle containing a little lime-water. Upon shaking the lime-water through the gas you will at once know what gas it is. This is the gas which the acid sets

free from limestone (carbonate of lime)—a very valuable constituent of the soil. A soil which contains a large proportion of carbonate of lime is called a *calcareous* soil.

We now see that the soil is a mixture of different minerals in a fine state of division, together with a greater or less amount of partially decayed dark-colored vegetable matter called humus. Of course the soil contains many minerals other than those we have mentioned.

#### EXERCISES

1. Devise experiments to show the difference between clayey and sandy soils in allowing water to sink through them and to rise through them.

2. Try whether humus makes any difference in the power of a soil to absorb or hold water.

3. Find whether nitrate of potash and nitrate of soda are readily soluble in water.

4. Mix a little dry powdered leaf-mould with a teaspoonful of powdered lime. Heat the mixture in a test tube. Smell the escaping gas and note its effect on damp litmus paper. Explain.

5. Try to find how the soils in your neighborhood were formed.



## XII. AIR AND WATER IN THE SOIL

*Material.*—Some garden soil, flower-pots, pickle bottles or other wide-mouthed bottles, an enamelled cup, a small basin, beans, peas or other large seeds, enamelled cups or test tubes, square pieces of glass.

Fill two-thirds of a quart bottle with ordinary soil, and shake the soil down well. Quickly pour enough water upon the soil to cover the surface of it to the depth of an inch or two. How do you account for the large number of bubbles which rise through the water. How could so much air find room in the soil? Add water to the soil till the air ceases to rise. What now fills the space which had been occupied by the air?

Fill two flower-pots with garden soil of the same quality, and germinate a few seeds in each pot. Set the pots in a warm place, and keep the soil moderately damp. When the plants are well started, saturate the soil in one of the pots with water to exclude the air, and keep it saturated by setting the pot in a basin of water. Keep the soil in the other pot slightly moist, but not wet enough to exclude the air. After a time, you should see a decided difference between the plants in the two pots. Describe and explain the difference.

You should recollect here that plants breathe, and therefore require oxygen from the air. As plants are composed of cells, we must suppose

that not only the cells in the leaves but those in the roots, as well as in the other parts of the plant, require oxygen. We can see, then, that when the spaces between the particles of soil are filled with water the roots may suffer for lack of the oxygen that they might have got from the air. We will learn that the air in the soil is useful to the plants in other ways. Plants which live under water can obtain oxygen enough, as fishes do, from the air dissolved in the water, but this is not true of land plants.

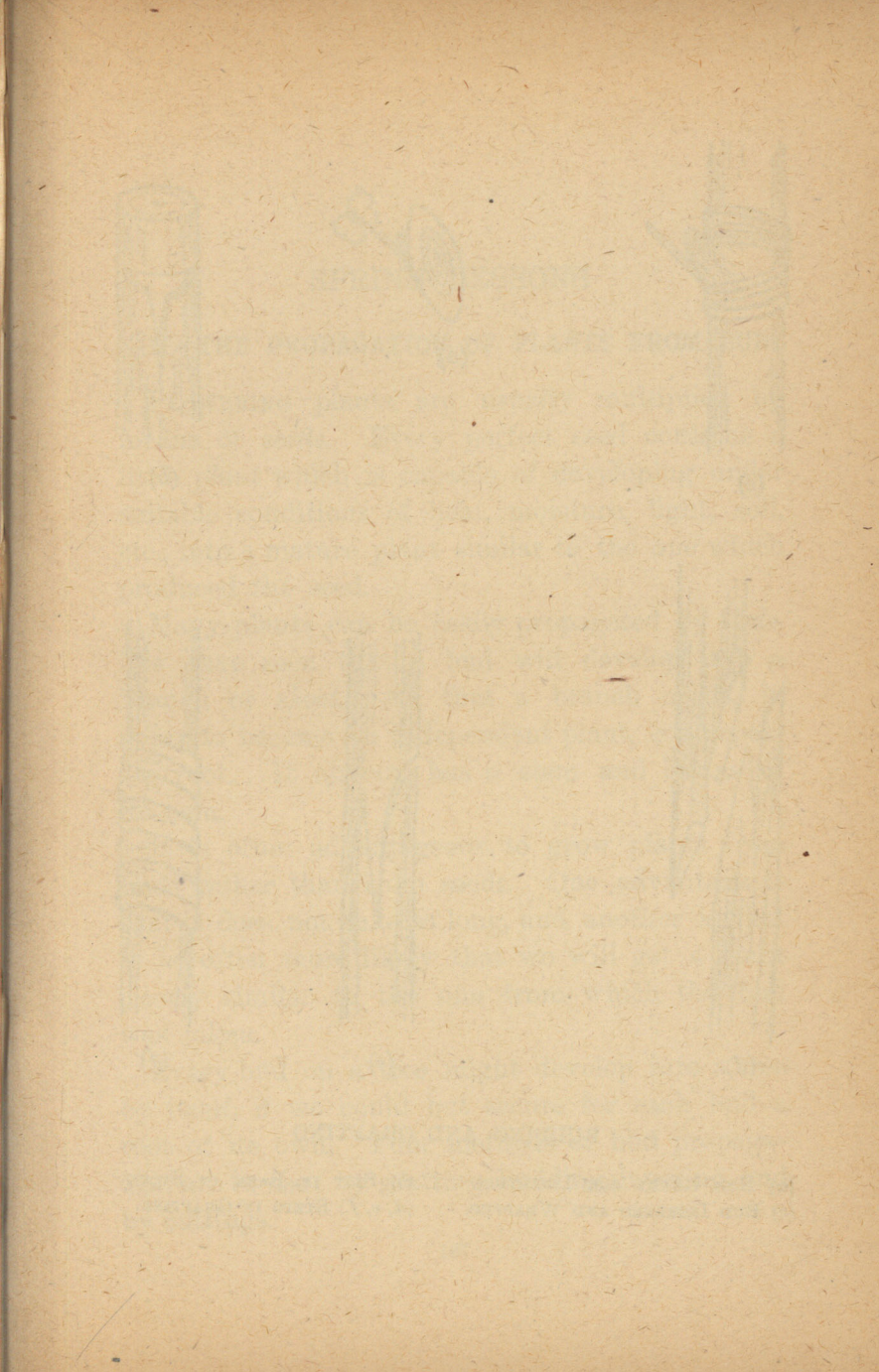
The last experiment emphasizes the importance of drainage in the case of all soils which are liable to remain soaked with water for a considerable time after rains. The drains carry off the surplus water, and allow the air to penetrate the soil and occupy the spaces between the soil particles.

It seems strange that plants can live so long without rain, in dry soil. If, however, you put very dry soil into an enamelled cup and heat it you will find that water will rise out of it in the form of steam, and condense on a piece of glass laid upon the mouth of the cup.

You have noticed too that when people dig deeply into the earth they sooner or later reach water. Much of the soil water rises gradually, by capillary attraction, towards the surface—as oil rises in a lamp-wick—and supplies the roots of plants, even in very dry seasons, with water from below.



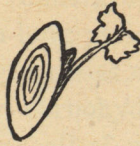
Were it not for this underground supply all vegetation would cease in long periods of drought, for plants require large quantities of water. They need water for making carbohydrates—such as starch, sugar and cellulose—all of which consist of carbon and the elements of water. They need it for making proteins, which contain the elements of water, and for the sap in which the food of the plant must be dissolved. Indeed the plant must take in, dissolved in water, all the food material absorbed by the root-hairs. We know that the plant requires much more water than it retains within its body, for we have seen how rapidly water is given off in transpiration by the leaves of plants.







(c)



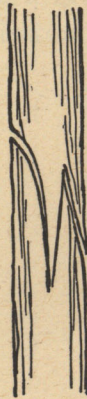
(a)



(b)



(d)



(e)



(f)

## BUDDING AND GRAFTING

(a) BUD READY FOR INSERTION.  
 (c) BUD INSERTED AND WRAPPED.

(b) SLIT IN BARK OF STOCK.  
 (d, e, f) STEPS IN GRAFTING.

## SPRING LESSONS

### XIII. THE PROPAGATION OF PLANTS FROM BUDS

FLOWERING plants are usually multiplied by means of *seeds*. Every perfect seed contains a little plant which is capable of developing under suitable conditions of heat, moisture, light, soil, etc., into a mature plant similar to the one which produced the seed.

Many plants can be easily propagated by *buds*. We have seen that a bud will develop into a branch or *shoot*. All that a branch needs, in order to become an independent plant, is a separate root. It already has a stem and leaves of its own.

It is often advantageous to grow plants from buds rather than from seeds. One advantage is that it does not take so long, and another is that it is often more likely that we will get a plant closely similar to the one from which the bud was taken.

Every bud on a tree might develop into a tree by itself, if we could but secure for each bud a root of its own. Four methods of bud propagation are in use: by grafting, budding, layering, and by cuttings.



**Cuttings.** In making cuttings from plants with soft and juicy stems, such as the geranium, coleus and verbena, short pieces with two or more leaves are cut from vigorous shoots, the cut being made close below a node (the point at which a leaf grows out), and just above which a bud may develop.

The cuttings are prepared by removing the lower leaves, and, if necessary, clipping the upper ones to prevent too great loss of water by evaporation. You remember that plants give off water mostly by the leaves. The smaller the leaf surface the less will be the loss by evaporation.

To keep the cuttings fresh, they are thrown as fast as they are trimmed into cold water. They are at first set out in moist sand in a shallow box. About half the length of the cutting should be covered, and the sand should be firmly pressed about it.

When the new roots are well started, the cuttings should be removed to little pots containing a mixture of sand and fine soil. When a pot is well filled with roots, the plants are ready to be transferred to larger pots. This should be done without greatly disturbing the roots.

The cuttings of some plants strike root well if set in a bottle containing water, so that the lower part of the cutting reaches a short distance below the surface of the water.

Cuttings from plants with hard woody stems, such as the currant, gooseberry and other shrubs, are made during the dormant season, after the leaves have fallen. They may be kept for a long time in a cool place in moist sand or sawdust. They should be "rooted" in moist sand, and when the weather becomes warm they may be at once set *obliquely* in good soil out of doors. Plants such as the blackberry, on whose roots buds will form, may be propagated from *root* cuttings.

**Layering.** Cuttings are separated from the parent plant before they form roots for themselves. In *layering*, the portion of the old plant which is to be used to form a new one is rooted before it is separated from the parent plant. This is often done by bending down the lower branches into slight depressions in the soil, pinning them there with a forked stick, and keeping this part covered with moist earth. After the root is well developed, the shoot is cut from the parent plant and set out in its permanent place.

If the shoot is too far from the ground to be rooted by the preceding method, roots may be started on the shoot before it is separated from the parent plant by encasing its stem—just above the point where it is to be cut off—with moss or soil kept constantly moist. The moss, two or three inches in thickness, must be wrapped tightly about the stem. If earth is used it may



be enclosed in a cylinder or box held in place by wire or twine.

A cut should be made partly around the branch to hinder the return flow of sap from the shoot which is to be removed. The moss and soil must be kept moist by frequent watering.

It is evident that layering must be carried out in spring or summer.

**Budding.** In both cuttings and layering, the shoots used for propagation form roots of their own, in the first after, in the latter before, separation from the parent plants. In *budding*, a single bud is taken from the plant to be propagated, and inserted in the bark of another related plant, called the *stock*, which is to provide a support and a root for the new shoot which will arise from the inserted bud. If budding is to be done in spring, vigorous twigs are cut in the dormant season from a tree of the desired variety. These twigs are kept moist by packing them in boxes of moist sand or sawdust until the weather has become warm enough for active growth.

The best *stocks* are one year old from the seed. The stock is prepared for the bud by making a cross-shaped cut through the bark on the north or shady side of the stem close to the ground.

A bud for insertion in this stock is cut out from a twig as follows: Make a shallow cut through the wood and extending upward under the bud,

beginning about one-quarter of an inch ( $\frac{1}{4}$  in.) below the bud. Then make another cut crosswise through the bark about one-quarter of an inch above the bud. Lift the edge of the bark here, and carefully peel it back and remove the bud, leaving the wood which you loosened by the first cut attached to the twig. If the inside of the bud, as removed, is hollow, you have spoiled it, for it needs the woody bundles here to unite with the cambium or growing layer of the stock. To insert the bud, raise the edges of the bark at the cross-shaped incision in the stock, and push the bud down under the bark until it fits neatly. Bring the parts into close contact by tying with soft twine or moist raffia.

When it becomes clear that the bud has united with the stock, the binding should be cut, and then, or early in the next season, the stem of the stock should be cut off a short distance above the bud. It is well to cover the cuts with wax.

Budding is sometimes done early in the fall. In this case the leaf blades below the buds should be cut off before the bud is inserted in the stock.

The bud will develop into a stem bearing branches, flowers and fruit. Although this new stem derives its water and mineral nutrients from a stock of a different variety, yet the fruit will be of that variety from which the *bud* came.



**Grafting.** In grafting, a *portion of a branch* (called the scion) from one tree is made to grow on the *root or stem of another tree* (called the stock). The stock is usually grown from the seed and should be of a *hardy* sort, while the scion is taken from a tree of a choice variety.

The scion will develop into a large stem with branches. It uses the root of the stock as though it were its own, and derives its water and food materials from the soil *through the stock*. Its growth, however, is due to the multiplication of its own cells by division, and the new cells have the same powers and properties as the cells of the tree from which the scion was taken. Consequently, the scion produces fruit of the *same* choice variety as its parent tree.

In *root-grafting*, the scions may be cut in mid-winter from the last season's growth of the branches, and stored in cool moist sand till the end of winter. They are then grafted on to the root, or short pieces of the root, of a young stock. In the case of the apple the stock should be about two years old.

There are different ways of setting the scion upon the root of the stock. In the *tongue-graft* the top of the root and the lower end of the scion are cut off evenly at the same slant, and a thin wedge or tongue is cut out of each near the middle of the slanting surface. The scion is then fitted

closely on the stock, so that the inner bark of the one exactly meets that of the other in at least one place. The joints should be wrapped tightly with strips of grafting cloth about half inch wide. The grafting cloth is made by covering strips of cheese cloth or muslin with a mixture of four parts of resin and one part of beef tallow melted together. Exposed cut surfaces of the scion should be protected by covering them with grafting wax made by melting together four parts of resin, two parts of beeswax and one part of tallow.

Scions may be grafted on to the stem of the stock in a similar way. When the diameter of the stem or branch of the stock is greater than that of the scion, it is usual to make a *cleft-graft*. This is done by splitting the cut end of the stock and inserting two scions. The scions are cut so as to form a slender wedge at the base. Care must be taken to bring the *cambium layer* (between the bark and the wood) of each scion into close contact with that of the stock in at least one point. All cut surfaces should be carefully protected by grafting wax.

Old fruit trees may be used to produce new and choice varieties of fruit by grafting (*top-grafting*) on to their branches short twigs from the desired varieties. A number of varieties may thus be grown on one tree. Top-grafting is



done in spring after the buds begin to swell. The scions must be kept moist and dormant till the time of grafting.

---

#### XIV. IMPROVEMENT OF CULTIVATED PLANTS

It is thousands of years since men in various parts of the world, emerging from the savage state, began to cultivate some of the wild plants which produced fruits or seeds suitable for human food. In the course of ages, by careful cultivation and selection these wild plants have been wonderfully improved.

In some cases the wild parent plants can still be found and recognized; in other cases they seem to have died out or else bear such a slight resemblance to their cultivated offspring that we cannot be sure of the relationship. The wild apple of the old world, from which our cultivated apples have sprung, is a very diminutive fruit. The improvement in size and quality of cultivated roots and tubers, not to speak of the common grains, has been equally remarkable.

There are very definite limits to the capacity of plants to respond to our efforts to change them. I should say that there is little likelihood that we shall ever be able to grow grains of wheat, for instance, as large as apples, or apples equal in size

to pumpkins. Still there is no reason for thinking that the limit has yet been reached. Indeed, as our knowledge of plants increases, so should our power to develop more productive forms of cultivated plants.

Three principal methods of plant improvement are in use. The first method is the selection of the best seeds from the strongest and most desirable plants; by constant selection of the finest seeds a great gain, both in the quantity and quality of the products, may be secured. This is, however, a slow process, giving uncertain results. In order to maintain the improvement which may be reached by this method it is necessary to keep on selecting the best seed year after year. If this is not done, many seeds from the poorer varieties will be sown and their offspring will gradually crowd out the better kinds of plants.

A second and accurate method consists in selecting a single plant which shows desirable qualities in a higher degree than do the individual plants surrounding it. Seeds from this plant are sown by themselves. If these seeds produce plants having the same desirable qualities as the parent plant, seeds of this generation are sown by themselves, and the process is continued, until a sufficient quantity for practical purposes is secured. A variety thus obtained will continue to breed true from the seed.



The third method depends on the production of *hybrids*. We have learned that every flowering plant is developed from an egg-cell, and that this egg-cell is formed by the union of a germ-cell which descends the pollen tube with another germ-cell in the ovule (the young seed). If the pollen grain comes from a plant of a different variety or species from that of the plant which it fertilizes, the egg-cell will develop into a plant which will probably resemble in some respects each of the two plants which had a share in producing the egg-cell.

It is evident, then, that if we find two related plants, each of which has some desirable characteristics not possessed by the other, we may succeed in uniting these features in one plant by transferring the pollen of one to the stigma of the other. If *cross-fertilization* occurs, the embryo may develop into a plant resembling in some respects each of the parent plants. This new plant is called a *hybrid*. Hybrids of the first generation do not breed true. If, however, they show desirable combinations of the qualities of the parents, they may be perpetuated by means of cuttings or buds.

In the next generation, a certain proportion of the different kinds of plants obtained will show fixed combinations which can be preserved by sowing the seeds of each type separately.

## XV. A LESSON ON TILLAGE

Country boys and girls are more or less familiar with the various methods of cultivating the land, and most city children must have seen these operations going on, if only from a railway carriage. Let us consider the use of all this hard work.

The plough and harrow are used in preparing the soil before the seed is sown. The plough goes deep down into the ground, turns the upper soil over and pulverizes it somewhat. It buries manure, weeds and stubble. The harrow with its many teeth pulverizes the soil more thoroughly if not so deeply.

This preparatory cultivation, if well done, is of great use in several ways. It exposes some of the lower soil to the action of the air. By loosening the soil it makes more room for air and water, both of which are needed by the roots of the plants. By breaking the soil up into separate particles it increases greatly the amount of surface exposed to the air and water. The air and water act chemically on substances in the soil, so that more soluble substances necessary for the growth of plants are formed there, and dissolve in the soil water. The loosening of the soil makes it easy for the rootlets to penetrate in all directions in search of food materials. Stirring the soil also permits the surplus water after rains to drain downward



into the earth. In this way ploughing aids in warming the soil. Wet soils are always relatively cold, for the heat of the sun is largely used in evaporating the water instead of in warming the soil.

In all cases in which the young plants are far enough apart to allow of it, cultivation to the depth of from two to four inches should be carried on throughout the season, or till the size of the plants interferes with the process. Repeated cultivation is necessary to kill the weeds and to maintain a loose soil mulch, which hinders the evaporation of water from the soil below during dry weather, and retains it for the thirsty rootlets. Stirring the surface soil breaks up the small continuous spaces through which the water from below would rise by capillary attraction, so that the water cannot escape so rapidly into the air, and thus be lost to the roots of the plant.

The roller is often used to crush clods of earth. It is useful in loose soils for compacting the earth somewhat. This helps to form small tubes in the loose soil, through which the water from below may rise to supply the roots of the young plants.

In a small garden the spade may do the work of the plough, while the rake and the hoe are used instead of the harrow and the horse cultivator. The soil about the seed, and about the little plants which are being set out in the garden, may be

compacted with the back of the hoe or by the pressure of the feet or hands of the gardener, thus bringing the soil particles into close contact with the roots of the young plants.

---

## XVI. ROTATION OF CROPS

Few soils will produce a good crop of the same plant year after year for a long period. To keep up the productiveness of the soil it is necessary to change the crop, that is, the species of plant, from time to time.

It has been supposed that the failure of a soil after a time to produce good crops of the same plant—wheat for instance—continuously, is because some of the substances in the soil which are essential to the satisfactory growth of the plant have been exhausted, or at least so greatly reduced in amount that there is not enough left to permit of a good yield. Some investigators claim, however, that the failure of the crop in such cases is often due to the fact that the roots of plants excrete into the soil substances which are poisonous to the plant which produces them.

A change of crop may be needed in order that weeds which have established themselves in the soil may be destroyed. For this purpose a crop that can be cultivated throughout the summer



should follow one which did not allow of continued cultivation.

Again, some plants send their feeding roots more deeply into the soil than others, and draw their food from a greater depth. Such plants may be planted in succession to shallow-rooted ones.

Clover is very largely employed in keeping up the supply of nitrogen in the soil. If you dig up a clover plant (and the same might be said of peas, beans, and any other plants of the legume-bearing family), you may find on its rootlets small nodules or tubercles. Each of these tubercles has been found to be the home of a colony of bacteria. These bacteria have the power of extracting nitrogen out of the air which occupies the spaces between the particles of soil, and of causing this nitrogen to unite chemically with other elements. The clover plant then absorbs this nitrogen compound out of the tubercles and uses it in the manufacture of proteins, which, as you know, are compounds containing nitrogen. So the stem and roots of the clover contain a good deal of combined (*fixed*) nitrogen which was obtained directly from the air by the bacteria of the tubercles. Consequently, when the whole clover plant or its roots are ploughed under they enrich the soil with a considerable amount of nitrogenous matter; hence it is that clover has come to find a place in most rotations.

Other plants besides clover are sometimes grown, to be ploughed under while green that they may by their decay add humus to the soil.

Different rotations are adopted to suit different conditions of soil, climate and market. These are some common three-year and four-year rotations:

- (a) Wheat, clover, potatoes.
- (b) Clover, corn, wheat.
- (c) Clover, corn, potatoes, wheat.
- (d) Corn, wheat, clover, grass.

Each farmer, however, must determine for himself the rotation which is most suitable for the different soils found on his farm, and for the various crops he finds it most profitable to raise.

---

## XVII. HOME AND SCHOOL GROUNDS

A home or a school in which love and order reign is a happy one, no matter how bare its walls or how barren and brown its surroundings. Yet even a happy home or school is made more attractive, and dearer to the hearts of its members, if the grounds about it are tastefully adorned with trees, shrubs, flowers and grassy lawns. The plainest cottage is made home-like by a few vines creeping over its door and roof, and a few flowers blooming beneath the windows.



In beautifying the home and school grounds nature will be found the best guide. In the woods, along the streams, about the borders of the meadows, here and there, may be seen natural groupings of trees and shrubs, ferns, and low flowering plants, which impress themselves on our memories because of their beauty and fitness. These natural pictures will furnish material for an imaginary picture which may be realized about the home and school.

A grassy lawn will form the basis of the plan. If the space is small, the trees must be planted in straight rows, or singly in the corners of the lot; but if there is room enough, it is better—because more natural—to plant them in groups. Trees should, as a rule, be set 20 or 30 feet apart; but they may be planted more closely at first, with a view to thinning them out when they become large enough to interfere with each other's best development. If possible, space should be found for a few fruit trees belonging to varieties hardy in the district. A row of evergreen trees will often afford welcome protection from cold winds.

Shrubbery may be worked in around the lawn, in vacant nooks and corners, and at bends in the paths. Suitable spots can be found for planting ferns from the woods, and some of the wild flowering plants which adorn the meadows and groves in spring and summer. On either side of the

pathways may be set such cultivated perennial plants as lilies, irises, peonies, dahlias, etc.

If young trees are transplanted from the neighboring woods they should be taken up carefully, so as to save as many rootlets as possible. The holes in which to set them may be dug in advance, so that the trees may be set out at once. If trees are obtained from a nursery they will probably be in good condition for planting out when they arrive. It is very important that the rootlets should not be allowed to become dry.

In most cases the tops and branches should be cut back to balance the loss of roots. If this is not done there will be so many leaves produced that the water will evaporate from the leaves faster than the roots can supply the loss, and the tree will dry out and die.

The roots should be covered with good soil, well shaken and packed down. Before the last of the soil is put in, saturate the earth about the roots with water. The last layer of soil spread on should be left and kept loose to hinder evaporation from below. In dry seasons the soil about the roots may occasionally need to be saturated with water. When necessary a guard of stakes or palings fastened together should be set around each tree.

Children would find it very interesting to grow some of the native trees from seed, in window boxes, or in plots out of doors, to be afterwards



transplanted in the home or school grounds or along the road.

As the trees grow they may need occasional *pruning*. Trees produce so many buds that the number of branches is liable to become too great. In the competition between the branches for food and light, those which gain the lead do not always add to the beauty or to the productiveness of the tree; hence the advantage of judicious pruning. You should never, in pruning, cut off or cut back a branch until you have considered what advantage will follow, either in stimulating the growth of other branches or in improving the form of the tree.

We have considered the beautifying of the home and of the school grounds together, for the same principles apply to both. The school takes the place of the home for several hours each school day. The school should aim to be an ideal home for the children for that time, but as there are usually more children in the school than in the family home, the school grounds need to be larger—much larger than they usually are.

In planting trees and shrubs on the school grounds, the different kinds of native trees should be represented as far as space permits. Some trees and shrubs whose fruits afford food for birds should also be planted. A well-selected variety of trees and other plants will make the school grounds a rich field for nature studies.

# THE PHYSICS OF SOME COMMON TOOLS

BY

CARLETON J. LYNDE, B.A., PH.D.

PROFESSOR OF PHYSICS, MACDONALD COLLEGE, QUE.

---

## Introduction

TO THE TEACHER.—The work in this chapter deals with tools which the pupils have all used or seen used. It is hoped that they may learn that the use of each of these tools is governed by law. In learning this, they will the more readily realize that in nature there is law and order everywhere.

It cannot be too strongly urged that the pupils be allowed to obtain this knowledge at first hand, by making the experiments themselves, with help and guidance from the teacher, of course, but the actual work should be done by the pupils.

*Apparatus.*—The apparatus to be purchased by the school need not exceed in cost one or two dollars, as the greater part of it may be borrowed from the homes of the pupils or from the nearest hardware store. A list of the apparatus needed is as follows:—

To be purchased or borrowed: One spring balance 6 inches long, weighing to 25 lbs., with divisions representing pounds; 1 spring balance  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches long, weighing to 4 lbs., with divisions representing ounces; 1 yard stick, 1 ball of stout cord, 1 thermometer, 1 support, as shown in the figures. This support may be made by



some of the boys or by a carpenter. It is made of 2 by 4 pine and is 6 feet high ; in place of it there may be used a staple driven into the ceiling, with a rope attached to it, the lower end of the rope being 6 feet from the floor, and having a loop to which the cord and spring balance are attached in the different experiments. One set of weights, consisting of three one-pound, two two-pound, one five-pound, one ten-pound, and one twenty-five-pound weight. The simplest way to get these weights is to make bags of close woven cloth and fill them with coarse dry sand or gravel to the required weight. Tie them securely and leave a 3-inch loop in the cord, in order that they may be readily attached to the different pieces of apparatus.

To be borrowed when needed : Shovel, pitchfork, crowbar, wheelbarrow, windlass, pulleys, jackscrew.

*Weather observations.*—One method of training pupils to habits of observation is to ask them to keep a daily record of the weather. The observations should be made at about the same time each day, and recorded in a book. From time to time these records should be examined, to learn the weather to be expected at certain seasons, when the wind is from a certain direction, etc. A convenient form of record is to divide the page into five columns with the following headings :—Date : Temperature : Direction and Force of Wind : Sunshine, Cloudy, Rain or Snow : Remarks : The apparatus needed is a common Fahrenheit thermometer, which should be fastened outside of a window on the north side of the school, about eight or ten inches from the glass, and so as to be easily read without opening the window. If it is within the means of the school, it is very important to have a mercury or aneroid barometer, as by means of it very accurate weather forecasts can be made. For recording these observations a sixth column would be needed in the record.

It will be found after a time, that the pupils who make observations on this phase of nature develop the habit of observation towards all phases of nature. They are very keen to notice changes in the weather, and also they are very keen in their observations of flowers, trees, grains, roots, animals, etc. This is a valuable habit to develop in young people, and when once developed is never wholly lost.

*Notebooks.*—The pupils should be asked to keep a record of the experiments they make in school and at home. For this purpose, a five or ten cent notebook is sufficient, the first eight pages to be reserved for the record of the weather, and the remainder to be used for the results of experiments.

*Experiments at home.*—The experimental work which the pupils do in their own homes is of even greater value to them than that which they do in the school, because they have only themselves to depend upon. They must think out their problem, plan the experiment, and then make the experiment, without help. This gives them self-reliance, and develops a confidence in their ability to master nature and wrest from her an answer to their questions. It is well to encourage this work in every way, first by helping them to make a start, and then by asking each day for the results obtained in the experiments at home.

TO THE GIRLS AND BOYS.—In this chapter we purpose to study some of the tools which you have all used or seen used, viz., the shovel, pitchfork, crowbar, wheelbarrow, derrick, windlass, pulleys, jackscrew and wheels, and we will try to find the rule or law which governs the use of each one. You will find it very interesting to make experiments of your own at home, and a number of such experiments are suggested in each lesson. All that you will need in the way of apparatus besides the shovel, pitchfork, crowbar, etc., will be a spring balance, some



stout cord, a support, some weights and a foot rule or yard stick. You will find that the most interesting experiments are those which you plan for yourselves. In making an experiment you will find it well, before you start, to answer the following questions: What do I wish to find out? How do I propose to do it? And after you have made the experiment, What do my results show?

### Lesson I

*The Lever.*—We are starting out now to study the shovel, fork, crowbar, wheelbarrow, derrick and windlass. In order to understand these it will be necessary to learn something of the ordinary lever.

Let us think of some of the levers that we have used or seen used; for example, the crowbar and shears.

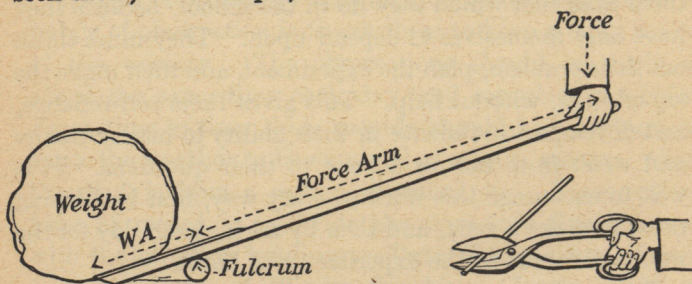


Fig. 1. The Crowbar and Shears.

*The Crowbar.*—We all know from experience something of the crowbar. For example, if we wish to give a stone the greatest lift possible with a given force, where do we place the fulcrum block? At once you will tell me that we place it as close to the weight as possible. Again, where do we place the hand in order to give the stone the greatest lift possible with a given force? As near the end as possible.

*The Shears.*—The shears is a double lever. If we were cutting a piece of wire, in what part of the jaws would we place it to use the least force? As close to the rivet as possible.

If we had two pairs of shears of the same design, except that one had long handles and the other short handles, which would we use to cut a very tough substance? The long-handled ones.

Other levers with which we are all more or less familiar are the pump handle, scissors, pliers, the handles of a plough, the levers on mowers, reapers, etc.

We all have a general knowledge of levers then. Now let us make this knowledge more scientific.

We make our knowledge of anything more scientific by doing three things:

1st. By making it exact. That is, we measure everything that has a bearing on the question we wish to decide.

In this case we are studying the lever, and we wish to know the force required to lift a certain weight when we know where the force and weight are with respect to the fulcrum. So we will measure the force, the weight, the distance the force is from the fulcrum and the distance the weight is from the fulcrum.

2nd. By trying to find a rule or law which connects all the quantities measured. In the case of the lever we will try to find a rule or law connecting the force, weight, force arm and weight arm. (See Fig. 1 for meaning of force arm and weight arm.)

3rd. By applying the law to new cases. We will apply the Law of the Lever, when we find it, to the shovel, the fork and the other tools mentioned above.

In Experiment I we will use *measured* weights and *measure* the distances in order to find the *law* of the lever. Then we will *apply* this law to new cases.



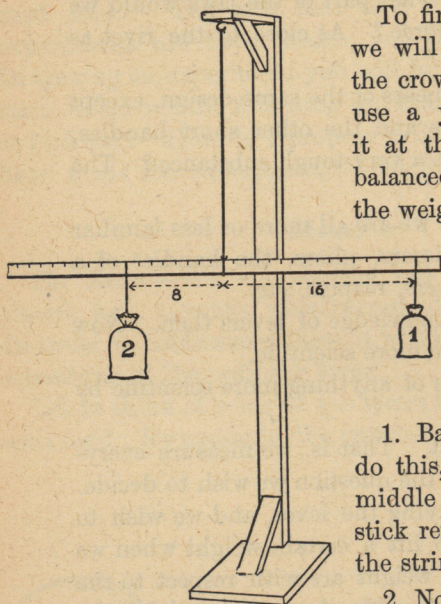
*Experiment I.—To find the “Law of the Lever.”*

Fig. 2. Apparatus: A Yard Stick, Weights, Support.

To find the Law of the Lever we will use a simpler lever than the crowbar or shears. We will use a yard stick, and balance it at the middle. When it is balanced in this way one-half of the weight of the stick just balances the other half, so that we need not consider the weight of the stick in the remainder of the experiment.

1. Balance the yard stick. To do this, attach a string at the middle and adjust it until the stick remains horizontal. Attach the string to the support.

2. Now attach 1 lb. at say 8 in. from the balancing point. Where does 1 lb. balance it? Attach the 1 lb. at other distances. Where does 1 lb. balance it?

We find in every case that the distances are equal.

3. Attach 1 lb. at 8 in. from the balancing point. Find where 2 lbs. balances it. Attach the 1 lb. at other distances. Find where the 2 lbs. balances it. We find that the 2 lbs. is always half as far from the fulcrum as the 1 lb.

4. Attach 2 lbs. at 12 in. from the fulcrum. Find where 3 lbs. will balance it. Attach the 2 lbs. at other distances. Find where the 3 lbs. balances it. We find that the 3 lbs. is always two-thirds as far from the balancing point as the 2 lbs.

## THE PHYSICS OF SOME COMMON TOOLS 191

Have you discovered a law connecting the weights and their distances from the fulcrum ?

There are a number of ways of stating this law, and one which some of you have already probably discovered is :  
"The distances are inversely proportional to the weights."

A more convenient way of stating it, and the way that we will use, is:

Weight No. 1, multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum, =  
weight No. 2 multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum.

For example : in (2)  $1 \times 8 = 1 \times 8$

in (3)  $1 \times 8 = 2 \times 4$

in (4)  $2 \times 12 = 3 \times 8$

5. Let us now apply this law :

If we know any three of these terms we can always calculate the fourth.

For example in (4). If 2 lbs. is placed 9 in. from the fulcrum let us use the law to calculate where 3 lbs. must be placed to balance it.

The law is : Weight No. 1, multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum, = weight No. 2 multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum.

Let us represent the unknown distance by " $d$ ."

Then  $2 \times 9 = 3 \times d$  or  $3d = 18$

or  $d = \frac{18}{3} = 6$

That is, 3 lbs. 6 in. from the fulcrum will balance 2 lbs. 9 in. from the fulcrum on the other side. Try it.

6. Make other applications of the Law of the Lever, as in 5.

Conclusion: The "Law of the Lever" is:

Weight No. 1, multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum, =  
weight No. 2 multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum.



*Suggestions for experiments at home:*

1. Repeat 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 and 6 with any straight stick.
2. Does the Law of the Lever apply to a teeter? Let two boys weigh themselves. Balance a teeter and mark off 1 foot spaces on both sides from the balancing point. If boy No. 1 stands with the centre of his feet just over the 4 feet mark, calculate where boy No. 2 must stand to balance him. Try it.

**Exercises**

1. State the Law of the Lever.
2. If a yard stick is balanced at the middle, and 2 lbs. is attached 8 in. from the middle, where will 1 lb. balance it? Where will 4 lbs. balance it? Make a sketch of each.
3. If 3 lbs. is attached 4 in. from the balancing point, where will 1 lb. balance it? Where will 2 lbs. balance it? Make a sketch of each.
4. In a pump handle, the pin is 6 in. from the point at which the piston is attached, the hand applies the force  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft. from the pin. If the piston and the water lifted in one stroke weigh 50 lbs., what force must the hand apply to just balance this force? (Leave out of consideration the friction and the weight of the handle.)
5. A boy weighing 100 lbs. is 3 feet from the balancing point of a teeter. Where must a boy weighing 75 lbs. stand to balance him?
6. A crowbar has 100 lbs. attached at the point. The fulcrum block is 1 foot from the point, and the force is applied 4 feet from the fulcrum; what force will just balance the 100 lbs. if we leave out of account the weight of the bar? Make a sketch.

**Lesson II**

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home? What were your results?

In the last lesson we experimented with measured weights and lengths to find the Law of the Lever, and then we made one or two applications of this law. In the lesson to-day let us apply the Law of the Lever to the shovel.

When a man is using a shovel left-handed, the left hand grasps the shovel near the shovel pan, and the right hand is at the end of the handle. In this case, when there is a load in the pan, the left hand is lifting up and the right hand is pushing down. (See figure.)

Let us use the Law of the Lever to find out the force that the right hand must exert to balance a certain weight on the pan. We will think of the left hand as the fulcrum.

*Experiment II.—The Shovel.*

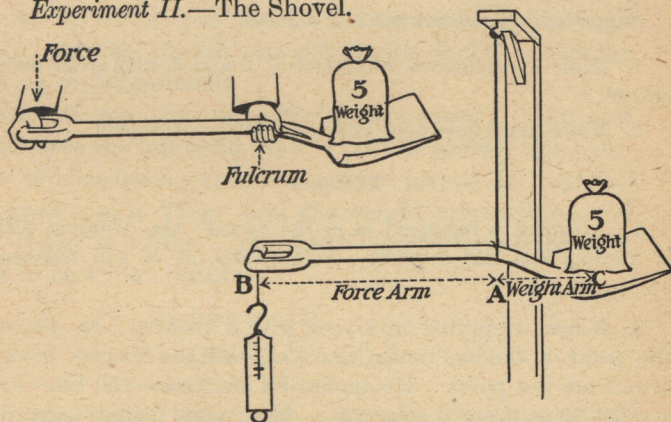


Fig. 3. Apparatus: Shovel, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.

To find the force at B that will support a certain weight at C:

1. Balance the shovel without the weight or spring balance. To do this attach the cord of the support at such a point A that the shovel handle will remain horizontal. A is the fulcrum.



2. Measure the force arm AB and the weight arm AC (C is the centre of the pan). Use the Law of the Lever to calculate the force at B that will support 5 lbs. placed with its centre over C.

When you have found this force by calculation, find it experimentally. To do this, place 5 lbs. with its centre exactly over C, and attach a spring balance at B and read the force indicated. Does this force agree with that obtained by calculation? Does the Law of the Lever apply to the shovel?

3. Use some other weight at C. Calculate the force and then find it experimentally.

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with your own shovel.

2. Make experiments of your own with the shovel.

#### Exercises

1. A shovel is balanced as in the figure ; the distance AB is 24 in., and AC is 8 in. What force at B will balance 12 lbs. at C ?

2. A man is prying up a rock with a crowbar ; he places the point of the bar under the rock, and the fulcrum block 4 in. from the point. He applies all his force—150 lbs.—at a point 60 in. from the fulcrum. How many pounds upward lift does he give to the rock? Leave out the weight of the bar. Make a sketch.

3. A boy is fishing, and is holding his pole so that the left hand is 6 ft. from the end where the line is attached and 3 ft. from the right hand, which is at the butt of the pole. He catches a fish weighing 2 lbs. What force must the right hand exert to hold it? Leave out the weight of the pole. Make a sketch.

4. A woman is sweeping with a broom, which she is holding in such a way that the lower hand is 3 ft. from the point at which the broom touches the floor, and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ft. from the upper hand. If the drag on the floor is equal to a pull of 1 lb., what force must the upper hand exert? Leave out the weight of the broom.

### Lesson III

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home? What results did you obtain?

In Lesson II we applied the Law of the Lever to the shovel, and found that when the shovel is used left-handed we could calculate the force exerted by the right hand; and we proved our calculation to be correct by making an experiment.

Some of you have probably already asked: "But how much does the left hand lift?" Let us answer this question by considering exercise 1 under Lesson II. In this the force arm is 24 in., and the weight arm is 8 in., and the weight is 12 lbs. You have already found the force at B to be 4 lbs., because

$$F \times 24 = 8 \times 12$$

$$F = \frac{8 \times 12}{24} = 4 \text{ lbs.}$$

In this case the right hand at B exerts 4 lbs. downward, and the weight at C is 12 lbs. The left hand at A lifts against the right hand 4 lbs., and also the weight at C 12 lbs. How much then does the left hand lift? Ans.  $12 + 4$  or 16 lbs. In addition to this, if the left hand is at the balancing point A, it must lift the weight of the shovel (4 lbs. is the average weight of a shovel). The left hand lifts how much altogether? Ans.  $16 + 4 + 4$  or 20 lbs. Notice in this case the left hand exerts a force of 20 lbs.



and the right hand only 4 lbs., so that when a shovel is being used left-handed, the left hand works much harder than the right ; in this case five times as hard.

In Experiment VIII we will use the shovel again and find *by experiment* how much force the left hand exerts.

Let us now apply the Law of the Lever to the pitchfork.

*Experiment III.—The Pitchfork.*

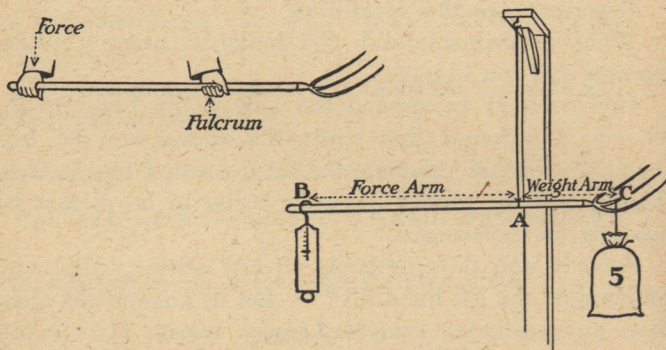


Fig. 4. Apparatus : Pitchfork, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.

To find how much force each hand exerts in using a pitchfork :

1. Balance the pitchfork without the weight or spring balance. To do this attach the cord of the support at such a point A that the fork handle remains horizontal. A is the fulcrum.

To find the force exerted by the right hand :

2. Measure the distance from A to a point B about 2 in. from the end of the handle (*i.e.*, about where the middle of the hand would come if the fork were in use). Measure the distance from A to C, the middle of the centre tine.

Calculate the force at B that will support 5 lbs. attached at C.

Find this force experimentally. To do this, attach 5 lbs. at C and find the force at B with the spring balance.

Does the calculated force agree with that found by experiment? Does the Law of the Lever apply to the fork?

To find the force exerted by the left hand :

3. Calculate this as follows : Find the weight of the fork on the spring balance. Add to this the force at B and the 5 lbs. at C.

Find it by experiment. To do this, attach the spring balance to the support and then attach the cord holding the fork to the spring balance. Now balance the fork again, then attach the 5 lbs. at C and hold the fork at B with the hand. Read the force indicated on the balance.

Does the calculated force agree with that found by experiment?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with a fork at home.
2. Make experiments of your own with a fork.

#### Exercises

1. A pitchfork is balanced as in the figure ; the distance AB is 40 in., and the distance AC is 24 in. What force at B will support 10 lbs. placed at C?
2. If the fork mentioned in exercise 1 weighs 3 lbs., what force must the left hand at A exert?
3. A man is using a shovel left-handed ; the left hand is lifting at a point 25 in. from the right hand, and 10 in. from the centre of the pan. There is 15 lbs. on the pan. What force does the right hand exert? Make a rough sketch.
4. If the shovel in exercise 3 weighs 4 lbs., what force does the left hand exert?
5. Is it well for a boy to learn to use a shovel and pitchfork both right-handed and left-handed? Why?



## Lesson IV

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home? What results did you obtain?

Levers of the 1st, 2nd and 3rd class.

In the levers that we have been studying so far, viz., the crowbar, shears, shovel, fork, etc., notice the

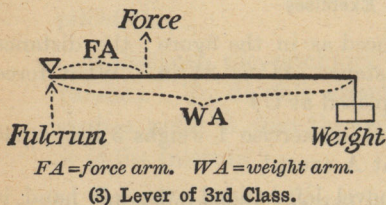
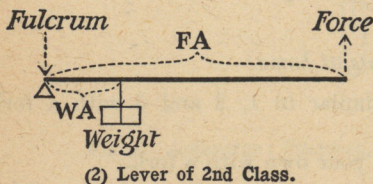
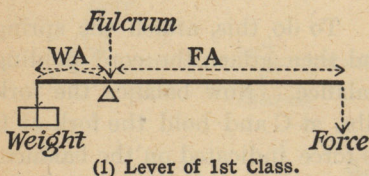


Fig. 5.

position of the fulcrum. Where is it placed with regard to the force and the weight in every case? The fulcrum in every case has been somewhere between the force and the weight. Levers in which this is true are called Levers of the 1st Class. See (1) Fig. 5.

In what other ways might we arrange the force, weight and fulcrum in a lever? One way is as in (2) Fig. 5, in which the fulcrum is at one end, the force at the other, and the weight between them. Levers of this kind are called

Levers of the 2nd Class. Examples: Nut crackers, crowbar, as in Fig. 7; wheelbarrow (as in Fig. 8).

What is the only other possible arrangement of the force, weight and fulcrum? We have it in (3) Fig. 5, in

which the fulcrum is at one end and the weight at the other, with the force between them. Examples: Sugar tongs, shovel, as in Fig. 10; fork, as in Fig. 11.

There are three classes of levers then, and we will find that some of the tools belong to only one class, while others belong to two classes, according to the way they are used, as crowbar 1st and 2nd, shovel and fork 1st and 3rd, etc.

Let us make an experiment now to see whether the Law of the Lever holds for levers of the 2nd class.

*Experiment IV.*—Levers of the Second Class.

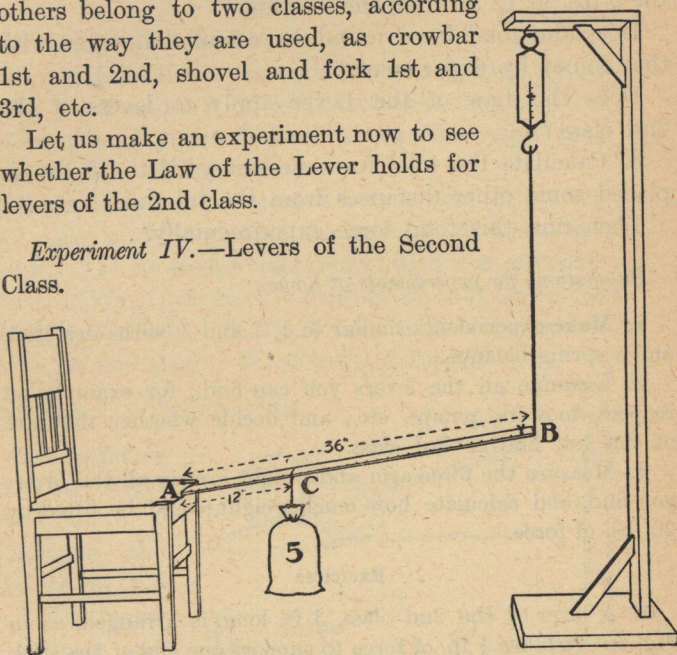


Fig. 6. Apparatus: Yard Stick, Spring Balance, Weight, Support.

To find whether the Law of the Lever holds for levers of the 2nd class:

1. Arrange the yard stick as in the sketch. Find the force indicated on the spring balance, when there is no weight attached to the stick. This is the force necessary to support one end of the stick. Record this force.



2. Measure the force arm AB, and calculate the force that will be necessary to support a weight of 5 lbs. attached 12 in. from the fulcrum A. Add to this the force necessary to support the stick alone. The result is the total force. Find this total force experimentally by attaching the 5 lbs. at 12 in. from the fulcrum.

Does the total force found by calculation agree with that found by experiment?

Does the Law of the Lever apply to levers of the 2nd class?

3. Calculate the total force necessary, if the 5 lbs. is placed some other distances from the fulcrum.

Then find this total force experimentally.

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with any stick and a spring balance.

2. Examine all the levers you can find ; for example, on reapers, mowers, pumps, etc., and decide whether they are of the 1st, 2nd or 3rd class.

3. Measure the force arm and weight arm in all the levers you find, and calculate how much weight could be lifted by 20 lbs. of force.

#### Exercises

1. A lever of the 2nd class, 3 ft. long, is arranged, as in Fig. 6. It takes  $\frac{1}{4}$  lb. of force to support one end of the stick alone. What total force will be necessary at B to support 12 lbs. placed 1 ft. from the fulcrum ?

2. What would be the total force necessary in exercise 1, if the 12 lbs. were placed  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ft. from the fulcrum ?

3. What would be the total force necessary in exercise 1, if the 12 lbs. were placed 2 ft. from the fulcrum ?

4. A crowbar, 5 ft. long, is arranged, as in Fig. 6. It takes 6 lbs. of force to support one end when there is no weight

on the bar. What total force will be necessary to support 100 lbs. placed 1 ft. from the fulcrum?

5. What will be the total force in exercise 4, if the 100 lbs. is attached  $1\frac{1}{2}$  ft. from the fulcrum? Make a sketch.

### Lesson V

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home? How many levers did you examine? Of what class were they? What were the results of your calculations as to the weight that could be lifted by 20 lbs. of force?

In Lesson IV we experimented with a simple lever of the 2nd class, and found that the Law of the Lever applied to it. Let us to-day experiment with the crowbar. In Lesson I (Fig. 1) we have a crowbar when it is used as a lever of the 1st class. In Fig. 7 below it is being used as a lever of the 2nd class. What is the difference?

#### *Experiment V.—The Crowbar.*

To find whether the crowbar obeys the Lever Law:

1. Arrange the crowbar as in the figure. The point is the fulcrum, and the spring balance exerts a force upwards. Measure the force arm, *i.e.*, the distance from the fulcrum to the force. Adjust the cord until this is some whole number of inches.

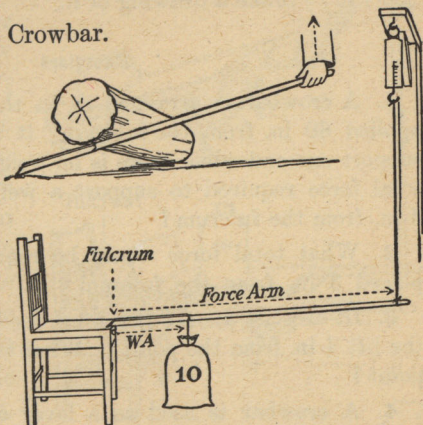


Fig. 7. Apparatus: Crowbar, Chair, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.



Record the force necessary when there is no weight on the bar.

2. Calculate the total force that will be required if 10 lbs. is placed 12 in. from the fulcrum.

Find the force by experiment. Does the crowbar obey the Lever Law?

3. Calculate the total force necessary if the 10 lbs. is placed at some other distance from the fulcrum. Find the force by experiment. Does the crowbar obey the lever law?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with your own crowbar.

2. If you have a crowbar, a spring balance weighing up to 25 lbs., and a strong support for the point of the crowbar, how could you arrange them so as to weigh a man weighing 200 lbs.? Make a drawing of it.

#### Exercises

1. A crowbar is arranged as in the figure. The force is applied 60 in. from the fulcrum ; it takes 6 lbs. of force to support one end when there is no weight on it. What is the total force required to support a weight of 120 lbs. placed 5 in. from the fulcrum ?

2. What total force would be required if 400 lbs. were placed 3 in. from the fulcrum ?

3. In exercise 1. If the total force is 106 lbs., what is the lift 4 in. from the point ? What is the lift 1 in. from the point ?

4. A crowbar is used as a lever of the 1st class. The distance from the fulcrum to the force is 6 ft., and from the fulcrum to the point is 1 in. A man exerts his whole force, 150 lbs. What is the lift at the point ? Leave out weight of bar. Make a sketch.

## Lesson VI

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home? What were your results? What plan have you for weighing the 200 lb. man?

In Lesson V we found that the crowbar obeyed the Law of the Lever. Also we found that one man could lift enormous weights by using the crowbar in the proper manner.

Let us next experiment with the wheelbarrow. Look at the wheelbarrow in the figure below. Where is the weight? Where is the force applied to lift the weight? Where is the fulcrum? What class of lever is the wheelbarrow?

*Experiment VI.—The Wheelbarrow.*

To find whether the wheelbarrow obeys the lever law:

1. Arrange the wheelbarrow as in the figure. Measure the distance from the fulcrum (the axle) to the points where the cord is attached. Make this distance a whole number of inches.

Record the force necessary to support the handles of the wheelbarrow when there is no weight on it.

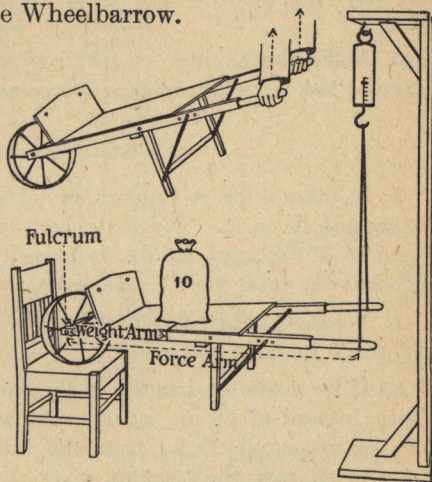


Fig. 8. Apparatus: Wheelbarrow, Weight, Spring Balance, Chair, Support.



2. Calculate the total force that will be necessary if 10 lbs. is placed 15 in. from the fulcrum. Find this total force experimentally.

Does the calculated total force agree with that found experimentally?

Does the wheelbarrow obey the lever law?

3. Calculate the total force that will be necessary if the 10 lbs. is placed at some other distance from the fulcrum. Find this total force experimentally.

Does the wheelbarrow obey the lever law?

*Suggestions for experiments at home:*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with your own wheelbarrow.

2. Tie the string nearer to the axle, *i.e.*, make the handles shorter. Is more or less force required on the balance? Why?

3. Make the handles longer by tying on extra pieces. Is more or less force required on the balance? Why?

#### Exercises

1. It takes 4 lbs. to support the wheelbarrow handles when no weight is on it. The distance from the force to the fulcrum is 50 in., and 20 lbs. is placed 15 in. from the axle. What is the total force? Make a sketch.

2. What would be the total force in (1), if the 20 lbs. were placed 25 in. from the axle?

3. If we made the handles of the barrow 1 foot longer, *i.e.*, 62 in. instead of 50 in., what would be the total force when 20 lbs. is placed 25 in. from the fulcrum, the force necessary to support the handles when there is no load being  $3\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.?

4. What is the advantage of having longer handles on the wheelbarrow?

## Lesson VII

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home with the wheelbarrow? What results did you obtain?

In Lesson IV we took up levers of the first, second and third class, and we learned that levers of the third class are those in which the fulcrum is at one end and the weight at the other, and the force somewhere between. Let us to-day experiment to see whether the lever law applies to this last class of levers.

*Experiment VII.*—Levers of the Third Class.

To find whether the lever law applies to levers of the third class :

1. Attach the spring balance as in the figure, 1 foot from one end of the yard stick ; hold this end down on the table. This end is the fulcrum.

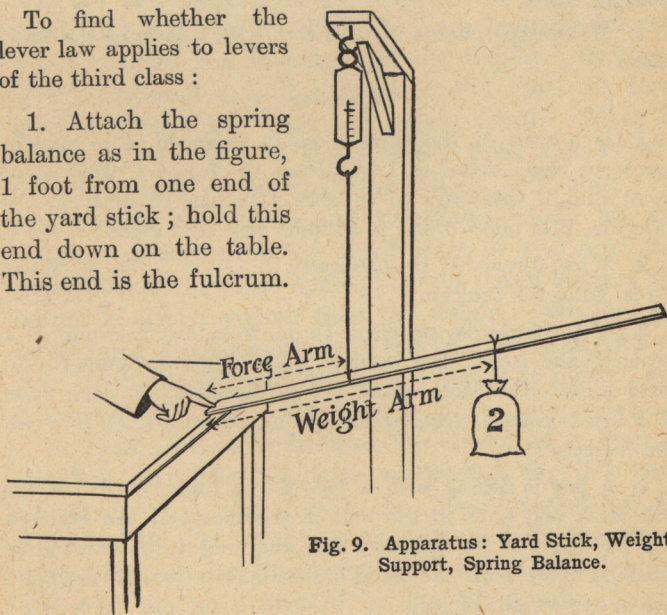


Fig. 9. Apparatus: Yard Stick, Weight, Support, Spring Balance.

Record the force necessary to support the lever when there is no weight on it.



2. Calculate the total force that will be necessary if we place 2 lbs. 2 feet from the fulcrum. Find it experimentally. Does the calculated force agree with that found by experiment? Does the lever law apply to levers of the third class?

3. Calculate the total force that will be necessary if 2 lbs. is attached 3 feet from the fulcrum. Find this total force by experiment. Does the Law of the Lever apply to levers of the third class?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3 with any straight stick.

2. Make experiments of your own with a lever of the third class.

**Exercises**

1. If a lever of the third class is arranged as in sketch, the force being attached 1 foot from the fulcrum, what total force will be necessary to support 2 lbs. at 18 in. from the fulcrum, if it takes 6 ozs. to support the lever alone!

2. What force will be necessary in (1) if 2 lbs. is placed  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft. from the fulcrum?

3. If the force is attached 15 in. from the fulcrum, in a lever of the third class, and it takes 5 ozs. to support the lever alone, what total force will be necessary in each case, if 3 lbs. is placed in succession 20 in., 25 in. and 30 in. from the fulcrum?

4. A boy is fishing with a pole 6 feet long; he holds the pole with one hand at the end of the pole and the other in the middle. If he catches a fish weighing 1 lb., what force must he exert with the hand at the middle to lift the fish? Leave out weight of pole.

5. A woman is sweeping with a broom 4 feet long. She holds it with one hand at the end and the other at the middle.

If she sweeps so that the drag on the floor is  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb., what force must the hand at the middle exert? Leave out weight of broom.

6. In levers of the third class is the force less than, or greater than, the weight?

7. To what two classes of levers does the shovel belong?

### Lesson VIII

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make at home with a lever of the third class? What were your results?

In the last lesson we experimented with a lever of the third class, *i.e.*, one in which the force is applied somewhere between the fulcrum and the weight. In levers of the first and second class we found that the force used is always less than the weight lifted. What do you find in the case of levers of the third class? The force is always greater than the weight, is it not? For example, in the shovel and pitchfork, which we will consider as levers of the third class in the next two experiments, the force exerted by the hand nearest the weight is always greater than the weight. We lose—as far as force is concerned—in levers of this class, but we gain in the speed with which the weight is moved, and in convenience.

In Lesson II we considered the shovel as a lever of the first class; in that case we treated the left hand as the fulcrum and found the force exerted by the right hand. Let us to-day experiment with the shovel again, but consider the right hand to be the fulcrum and find the force exerted by the left hand. In this case we are using the shovel as a lever of the third class.



*Experiment VIII.*—The Shovel as a Lever of the Third Class.

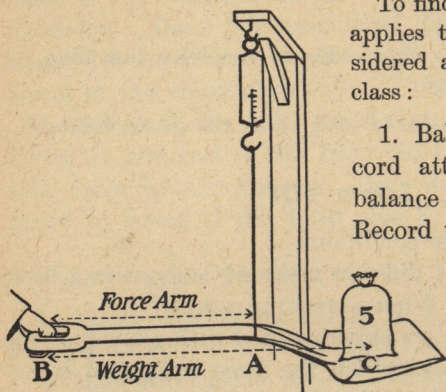


Fig. 10. Apparatus: Shovel, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.

To find whether the lever law applies to a shovel when considered as a lever of the third class :

1. Balance the shovel on the cord attached to the spring balance and the support. Record the force necessary to support the shovel alone.

2. Measure the distance from the fulcrum to the force, *i.e.*, the force arm BA, also the distance from the fulcrum to the centre of the pan, *i.e.*, the weight arm BC.

Calculate the force at A that will be necessary to support 5 lbs. placed with its centre over C.

Then find this total force experimentally. Hold B with the hand, and place 5 lbs. over C.

Does the calculated force agree with that found by experiment? Does the lever law apply to the shovel when considered as a lever of the third class?

3. Find the force exerted at B, by using the spring balance. Is the force at A equal to that at B, plus the weight at C, plus the weight of the shovel?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Repeat 1, 2 and 3 with a shovel.
2. Make experiments with some other lever of the third class, such as a fish-pole.

### Exercises

1. A shovel is suspended as in the sketch. The distance BA is 24 in., the distance BC is 32 in. It takes 4 lbs. force to support the shovel alone. What force at A will be required to support 5 lbs. at C?

2. If we think of the fulcrum being at A in exercise 1, the shovel is a lever of the first class. What force at B will be required to support 5 lbs at C?

3. Consider exercises 1 and 2; the force at B and the weight at C are pulling down. The force at A is lifting up against both of these, and is also lifting the weight of the shovel; therefore, the force at A must be equal to the force at B, plus the weight at C, plus the weight of the shovel. Is it?

4. A shovelful of earth weighs about 12 lbs. If we were using the shovel mentioned in exercise 1, what force at A would be necessary to support a shovelful of earth weighing just 12 lbs.?

5. What force would be necessary at B in exercise 4?

6. Is the force at A equal to that at B, plus the weight of the earth, plus the weight of the shovel?

### Lesson IX

Record the weather conditions.

What experiments did you make with a shovel considered as a lever of the third class? What other lever of the third class did you experiment with? What were your results?

In Lesson VIII we experimented with a shovel, thinking of it as a lever of the third class. Let us to-day experiment with a pitchfork in the same way first, and then carry the experiment one step further.



*Experiment IX.*—The Pitchfork as a Lever of the Third Class.

PART I.—To find whether the Lever Law applies to a pitchfork when considered as a lever of the third class.

Repeat 1, 2, 3 of Experiment VIII, using the fork instead of the shovel.

PART II.—In all the experiments that we have made so far with the shovel

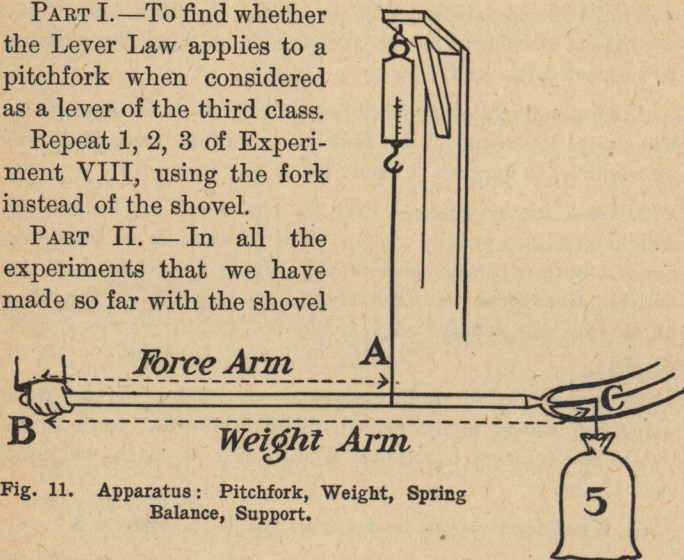


Fig. 11. Apparatus: Pitchfork, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.

and the pitchfork in Experiments II, III, VIII and IX, we have been very careful to balance the shovel and pitchfork in the first part of the experiment. We did this in order to simplify the experiment by having all the weight of the shovel and the pitchfork come on the left hand. When we are actually using the shovel or fork left-handed, however, we do not always place the left hand exactly at the balancing point. For example, if we have to carry a very heavy load on the pitchfork, where do we place the hands? We move the left hand closer to the tines, do we not? And the right hand also. Let us investigate a case of this kind.

To find whether the force exerted by each hand is less when they are moved closer to the weight :

1. Move the position of A and of B 1 foot nearer to the tines, Fig. 11 a. Of course the fork is no longer balanced and each hand supports part of its weight.

Keep one hand at B, and record the part of the weight of the fork supported at A.

Fasten the cord to the support and use the spring balance to find the part of the weight of the fork supported at B.

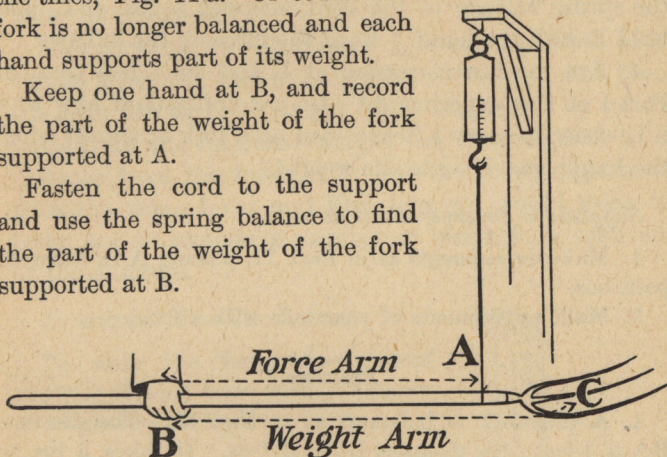


Fig. 11 a. Apparatus: Pitchfork, Weight, Spring Balance, Support.

2. To find the force exerted by the right hand at B when there is 5 lbs. placed at the centre of the middle tine.

Consider the fork as a lever of the first class, with A as the fulcrum. Measure the force arm AB, and the weight arm AC. Calculate the force at B that will support 5 lbs. suspended at C. Subtract from this force the part of the weight of the fork that B supports. This gives the total force at B.

Find this total force experimentally, by attaching the 5 lbs. at C, and using the spring balance at B.

3. To find the force exerted by the left hand at C.

Consider the fork as a lever of the third class with fulcrum at B. Measure the force arm BA and the weight



arm BC. Calculate the force at A that will support 5 lbs. at C. Add to this the part of the weight of the fork supported by A. This gives the total force at A.

Find this total force experimentally. To do this attach the spring balance to the cord, suspend 5 lbs. at C, and hold B with the hand. Read the force on the balance.

4. Are the forces exerted at B and at A less than in Part I of this experiment? Do we understand now why it is easier to carry a heavy load on a fork or shovel when the hands are closer to the weight?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make experiments as in Part II, placing A in different positions.

2. Make experiments of your own with a fork.

#### Exercises

1. A pitchfork is balanced as in Fig. 11. The distance BA is 3 feet ; the distance BC is 5 feet. It takes 3 lbs. to support the fork alone. What is the total force at A required to support 5 lbs. attached at C?

2. If we think of the fulcrum being at A in exercise 1, the fork is a lever of the first class. What force at B will be required to support 5 lbs. at C?

3. Is the total force at A equal to the force at B, plus the weight at C, plus the weight of the fork?

4. In exercise 1, A and B are shifted 1 foot nearer to the tines ; the weight of the fork supported at A is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lbs., and at B  $\frac{1}{2}$  lb. What force must the right hand at B exert to support 5 lbs. at C?

5. In exercise 4, what total force at A is necessary to support 5 lbs. at C?

6. Are the forces exerted at B and A, exercises 4 and 5, less than those exerted at B and A, exercises 1 and 2? Is it easier to lift a weight when the hands are closer to the tines?

## Lesson X

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results from your experiments at home with the pitchfork?

*More about Levers.*—In Lesson I we experimented with a simple lever, the yard stick, with two weights, and found the lever law to be “weight No. 1 multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum = weight No. 2 multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum.” Let us to-day experiment with the same lever and find how we would state the lever law to include a number of weights on each side of the fulcrum.

*Experiment X.—The Lever.*

To state the Lever Law when applying it to a lever with a number of weights on each side:

1. Balance the yard stick. Place 1 lb. 6 in. from fulcrum and 1 lb. 10 in. from the fulcrum on same side. Find experimentally where 1 lb. will balance them. What is the law?

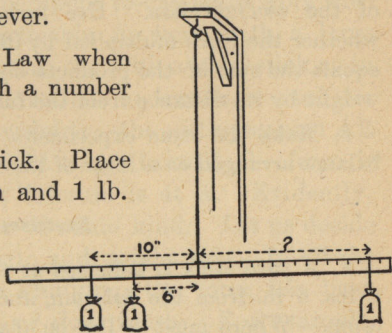


Fig. 12. Yard Stick, Weights, Support.

2. Place 1 lb. at 6 in. from the fulcrum and 2 lbs. at 10 in. from the fulcrum on the same side. Find experimentally where 2 lbs. will balance them. What is the law?

Have you found the law? May it be stated as follows: Find the product of each weight by its distance from the fulcrum, then “the sum of the products on one side of the fulcrum equals the sum of the products on the other”?



Try this law in the following cases :

3. If 1 lb. be placed 4 in. from the fulcrum and 2 lbs. 9 in. from the fulcrum on the same side, calculate where 2 lbs. will balance them. Try it experimentally. Does the law hold ?

4. If 1 lb. be placed 3 in. from the fulcrum and 2 lbs. 15 in. from the fulcrum on the same side, and 2 lbs. 8 in. from the fulcrum on the other side, calculate where 1 lb. will balance the lever. Try it experimentally. Does the law hold ?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Arrange a straight stick and spring balance as a lever of the second class. Use two or three weights. Find whether the force multiplied by its distance from the fulcrum equals the sum of the products obtained by multiplying each weight by its distance from the fulcrum.

2. Make the same experiment with the stick and spring balance arranged as a lever of the third class.

#### Exercises

1. A yard stick is balanced at the centre. On one side is 2 lbs. 6 in. from the fulcrum, and 1 lb. 8 in. from the fulcrum. Where must 2 lbs. be placed to balance the lever ? Make a sketch.

2. If 3 lbs. be placed 6 in. from the fulcrum and 2 lbs. 10 in. from the fulcrum on the same side, and 4 lbs. is placed 6 in. from the fulcrum on the other side, where must 1 lb. be placed to balance the yard stick ? Make a sketch.

3. A yard stick is arranged as a lever of the second class, with the fulcrum at one end and the force at the other. 6 lbs. is placed 8 in. from the fulcrum and 4 lbs. 24 in. from the fulcrum. What force is necessary to balance them ? Neglect the weight of the stick. Make a sketch.

4. Two boys are carrying 50 lbs. tied to a pole 7 ft. long. The pole weighs 6 lbs. Each boy has his shoulder 1 foot from an end of the pole. If the weight is attached 2 ft. from the shoulder of the boy in front, how much is each boy carrying? Make a sketch. [NOTE.—To calculate what the second boy is carrying, consider the shoulder of the boy in front to be the fulcrum, and treat the bar as a lever of the second class. Reverse the process to find what the boy in front is carrying.]

### Lesson XI

Record the weather conditions.

What were your results with levers of the second and third class with two or more weights?

*The Derrick.*—In the experiment to-day let us work with a derrick. It is not practicable to work with a large derrick, so let us make a small one with a yard stick as in the figure below. We know that a derrick is used for lifting and moving heavy weights; the swinging arm AB is called the boom, the weight hangs from B, the force is applied along BE, and the fulcrum is at A. Evidently, then, the derrick is a lever of some kind. Let us decide what to take as the force arm and weight arm. In all the levers that we have been studying, the force has been acting vertically upwards or downwards. For example, see Figs. 2, 3, 4 and 5. In each of these, what is the angle between the force arm and the direction along which the force acts? Always a right angle, is it not? In the case of the derrick, then, the force arm is the perpendicular distance from the fulcrum A to the line along which the force acts; *i.e.*, the force arm is AD at right angles to BE. Similarly, the weight arm is the perpendicular distance from the fulcrum to the line along which the weight acts; *i.e.*, AB in (1) and AF in (2).



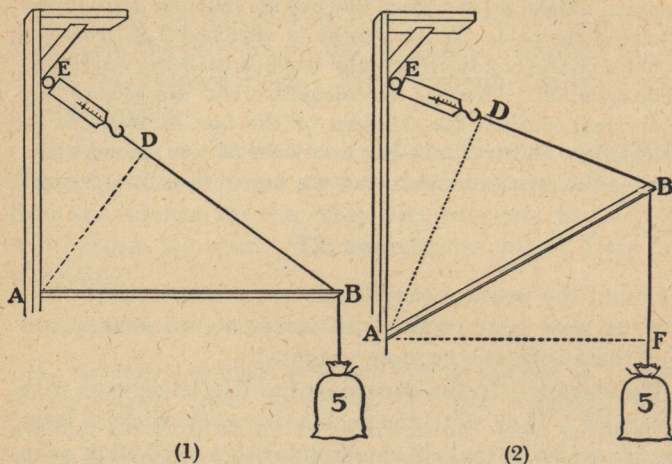
*Experiment XI.—The Derrick.*

Fig. 13. Apparatus: Yard Stick, Spring Balance, Weights, Support.

To find whether the Lever Law applies to the derrick :

1. Arrange the derrick as in (1), the boom being horizontal with 5 lbs. attached at B. Measure the force arm AD and the weight arm AB. Calculate the force which it is necessary to exert along BE to support 5 lbs. at B ( $\text{Force} \times \text{AD} = 5 \times \text{AB}$ ). Find this force experimentally as follows: Read the force indicated on the spring balances when the 5 lbs. is attached at B, then remove the 5 lbs. and find the force necessary to support the boom alone. The difference between these readings is the force. Does the calculated value of the force agree with that obtained by experiment?

Does the Lever Law apply to the derrick?

2. Arrange the derrick as in (2). Measure the force arm AD and the weight arm AF. Calculate the force that will support 5 lbs. attached at B.

Find the force experimentally as in (1). Does the calculated value agree with the experimental? Does the Lever Law apply to the derrick?

*Suggestions for experiment at home:*

Arrange a derrick as illustrated above and try it in new positions. Measure the force arm and weight arm. Calculate the force, then find it by experiment.

### Exercises

1. What class of lever is the derrick? If the force arm AD is less than the weight arm as in (1) it is a lever of the 3rd class. If the force arm is greater than the weight arm, it is a lever of the 2nd class.

2. If the weight arm AB in (1) is 3 ft. and the force arm is 2 ft., what force will support 10 lbs. attached at B? Leave out weight of boom.

3. If a derrick is arranged as in (1) and the boom is 20 ft. long and the force arm is 15 ft., what force will be required to support  $\frac{1}{2}$  ton? Leave out weight of boom.

4. If the weight arm AF in (2) is 2 ft. and the force arm AD is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  ft., what force will be needed to support 10 lbs. attached at B? Leave out weight of boom.

5. If a derrick is arranged as in (2) and the weight arm is 16 ft. and the force arm is 18 ft., what force will be required to support  $\frac{1}{2}$  ton? Leave out weight of boom.

### Lesson XII

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results of your experiments at home with the derrick?

*The Windlass and Friction.*—We are all familiar with some form of the windlass; for example, the one frequently used for drawing water from a well with a chain and



bucket. The force is applied at the crank handle; the weight is the chain, bucket, and water in the bucket. Where is the fulcrum? The centre of the axle or drum, is it not? What class of lever is the windlass? The first class during one half-turn and second during the other. Let us find whether the lever law applies to the windlass.

*Experiment XII.*—The Windlass and Friction.

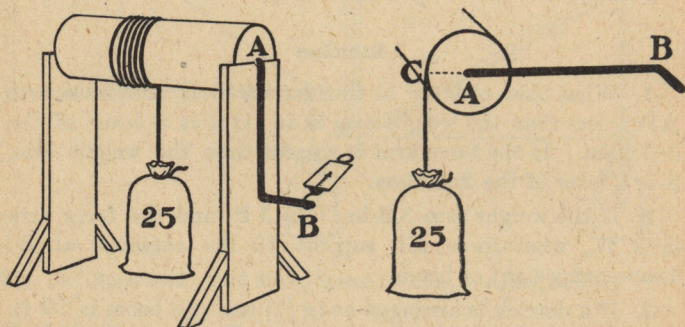


Fig. 14. Apparatus: Windlass, Weight, Spring Balance, Cord.

To find whether the Lever Law applies to the windlass:

1. Measure the force arm, that is, the crank arm AB, and the weight arm; *i.e.*, the radius of the drum AC. Calculate the force necessary at B to support 25 lbs. suspended at C.

Then find the force experimentally. To do this, arrange the windlass as in Fig. 14; that is, have the crank arm hanging down, because in this position the weight of the arm does not affect the experiment.

Attach the weight at C, and find the force on the spring balance attached at B.

*Friction.*—When you have made this experiment *carefully* you will notice that it takes *less* force than you calculated to *support* the weight. Also if you pull on the crank

handle with the spring balance so as to slowly raise the weight, you will find that it takes a little *more* force than the calculated value.

What is it that makes it harder to *lift* the weight, but easier to *support* it? It is the friction of the axle, is it not? Let us consider friction for a time. Think of all the cases of friction you can. How does the friction always act with regard to the motion you wish to produce? Friction always tends to stop the motion, does it not? This is a Law of Friction; *i.e.*, friction always acts against the motion.

Now that we know this Law of Friction, let us go back to the experiment above. We can find the force that will just support the weight, if there were no friction, as follows:

Pull on the spring balance so that the weight is slowly raised. Record the reading on the balance. Then let the spring balance go back slowly, so that the weight is slowly lowered. Record the reading on the balance.

In the first case the friction is opposing the motion, so that the reading on the balance is equal to the force that would balance the weight, if there were no friction, plus the friction. In the second case the friction is also opposing the motion, so that we have to exert a less pull on the spring balance to keep the motion downward a slow one. That is, the reading on the balance is equal to the force that would just support the weight, if there were no friction, minus the friction. So we have:

Reading I = force that supports weight + friction.

Reading II = force that supports weight - friction.

If we add these together we get:

Reading I + Reading II =  $2 \times$  force that would just support the weight, if there were no friction.

$$\text{Force} = \frac{\text{Reading I} + \text{Reading II}}{2}.$$



In this way we have eliminated the friction, and have obtained the force that would just support the weight if there were no friction. Does this force agree with the calculated value? Does the lever law apply to the windlass when we eliminate the friction?

2. Make an experiment similar to 1, using a weight of 15 lbs.

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

1. Make an experiment with a well windlass. Use a spring balance to weigh the bucket with water in it, and part of the chain. Measure the radius of the drum and the crank arm. Calculate the force that would balance the bucket, then find it by experiment as above.

2. If there is no windlass convenient, make one by using an old broom handle or fork handle for the drum and a piece of lath for crank arm. Experiment with this.

**Exercises**

1. The radius of the drum is 2 in., the crank arm is 12 in. long; what force will support 25 lbs. if there is no friction?

2. If the radius of the drum is 2 in., and the crank arm is 12 in., what weight can be supported by a force of 30 lbs. if there is no friction?

3. In finding the force experimentally, we find that it takes a pull of 15 lbs. on the spring balance to raise a weight slowly, and only 10 lbs. when we are lowering the weight slowly. What is the force that would just balance the weight, if there were no friction? What is the friction?

4. If the reading on the balance is 8 lbs. when a weight is slowly raised, and 5 lbs. when it is slowly lowered, what is the force that would balance the weight, if there were no friction. What is the friction?

## Lesson XIII

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results of your experiments with the windlass at home?

*The Law of the Pulley and the Law of Machines.*—We are all acquainted with systems of pulleys such as are illustrated in the figure below. Let us examine them to find some relation between the weight lifted and the force. In (1) where there is just one pulley, if we have 10 lbs. of weight and we eliminate the friction, how much force will it take to support it? It will be just 10 lbs., as we shall see later. Notice, however (2). How many ropes are there supporting the weight? How much does each rope support? How much must the force be on the spring balance to support the weight? There are two ropes supporting the total weight of 15 lbs., so each supports just  $\frac{1}{2}$  of it, or  $7\frac{1}{2}$  lbs., and as the force is pulling against only one of these ropes it will be  $\frac{1}{2}$  the weight, or  $7\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. if the friction is eliminated.

Again in (3) there are three ropes supporting the total weight of 15 lbs. Each then will support  $\frac{1}{3}$  of it, or 5 lbs., and as the force is pulling against only one of the ropes it will be equal to  $\frac{1}{3}$  of the weight, or 5 lbs., *i.e.*, if we eliminate the friction.

Similarly in (4) where there are four ropes supporting a total weight of 16 lbs., how much will the force be? The force will be  $\frac{1}{4}$  of 16 lbs., or 4 lbs. if we eliminate the friction.

What then is the Law of the Pulley? May it be stated as follows: "If there were no friction, the force that would support a weight on any system of pulleys is equal to the weight divided by the number of ropes supporting the weight"?

Let us test this law experimentally.



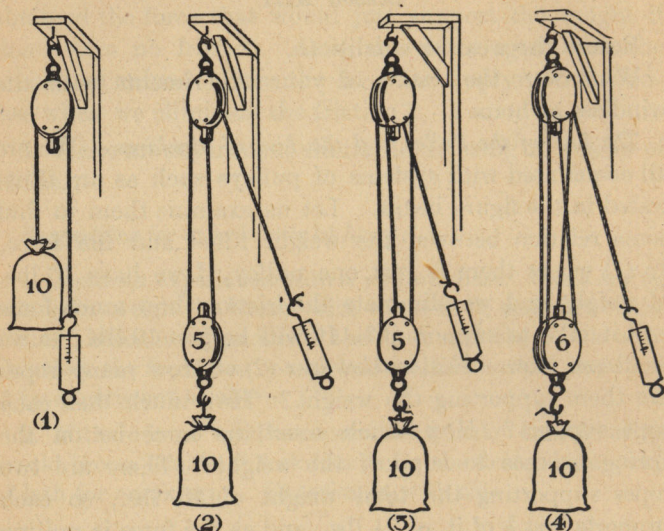
*Experiment XIII.—PART I.—The Law of the Pulley*

Fig. 15. Apparatus : Pulleys, Weights, Cord, Support.

To test the Law of the Pulley:

In order to decrease the friction it is well to oil the pulley axles and use a stout cord in place of the usual heavy rope.

1. Find the force in (1), Fig 15. We cannot neglect the friction, but we can find the force that would just support the weight if there were no friction, as we did in the last experiment. That is: (a) pull on the spring balance so that the weight is slowly raised. Record the reading on the balance. (b) Decrease the pull so that the weight is slowly lowered, and record the reading on the balance. Then we have:

Reading I = force + friction.

Reading II = force - friction.

Adding these we have :

$$\begin{aligned} 2 \text{ Force} &= \text{Reading I} + \text{Reading II.} \\ \text{or Force} &= \frac{\text{Reading I} + \text{Reading II.}}{2} \end{aligned}$$

2. Repeat this with (2), (3), (4), Fig. 15. Does the Law of the Pulley hold ?

### PART II.—The Law of Machines.

In (2) Fig. 15 there are two ropes supporting the weight. How far down would we have to pull the rope to which the spring balance is attached, in order to raise the weight 1 foot. How far in (3) and (4), Fig. 15 ?

1. Find by experiment how far the force moves down when the weight is raised 1 foot, with pulley arranged as in (2), Fig. 15.

2. Make the same experiment with pulleys arranged as in (3) and (4), Fig. 15.

We find that in (2) where two ropes are supporting the weight, the force moves 2 ft. to raise the weight 1 foot. When there are three ropes as in (3), the force moves 3 ft. to raise the weight 1 foot, and when there are four ropes as in (4), the force moves 4 ft. to raise the weight 1 foot.

*Work.*—Work is measured in *foot pounds*. When 1 lb. is raised 1 foot, 1 foot pound of work is done. If 1 lb. is raised 2 ft., 2 foot pounds of work are done ; if 2 lbs. is raised 5 ft., the work done is 10 foot pounds. Similarly, if a force of 1 lb. moves 1 foot, 1 foot pound of work is done, or if a force of 5 lbs. moves 4 ft., 20 foot pounds of work are done.

This leads us to the Law of Machines.

In (2) Fig. 15,  $7\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. of force moves 2 ft. to raise 15 lbs. 1 foot. The work put into the pulley is  $7\frac{1}{2} \times 2$ , or 15 foot



pounds, and the work accomplished is  $15 \times 1$ , or 15 foot pounds.

Again in (3), 5 lbs. of force moves 3 ft. to raise 15 lbs. 1 foot. Again, the work put into the pulley is  $5 \times 3$  or 15 foot pounds, and that accomplished is  $15 \times 1$ , or 15 foot pounds. Similarly in (4) the work put into the pulley equals the work done by it.

This gives us the very important "Law of Machines," viz., if there is no friction, "The work done by a machine is equal to the work put into it."

This law applies to every machine ever made, no matter how simple or how complicated.

In every machine, however, there is always friction, so that the work we get out is always less than the work we put into it. Part is always wasted in friction. We oil machines and use roller and ball bearings to make this waste as little as possible.

*Suggestions for experiment at home :*

Experiment with any pulleys you have. Show that the force equals the weight divided by the number of ropes supporting the weight when we eliminate friction. Also show that when the weight is raised 1 foot the force must move 2 ft. if two ropes are supporting the weight, or 6 ft. if six ropes are supporting the weight, etc.

**Exercises**

1. Draw systems of pulleys in which 1, 2, 3, 4 and 5 ropes are supporting the weight.

2. In a system of pulleys in which two ropes are supporting the weight, the lower block weighs 5 lbs., and 25 lbs. is attached to the lower block. What is the force? By experiment, the reading on the balance when raising the weight slowly is 18 lbs., and when lowering it slowly is 12 lbs. What is the force? What is the friction?

3. In a system of pulleys in which four ropes are supporting a weight of 25 lbs., the lower block weighs 7 lbs.; what force would balance this, if there were no friction? By experiment, the readings on the balance are 12 lbs. to raise and 4 lbs. to lower. What is the force? What is the friction?

4. State the Law of Machines.

5. In exercise 2, if the weight of 30 lbs. is raised 1 foot, how far does the force move? How many foot pounds of work are done on the weight? How many foot pounds of work does the force do? Does the law of machines hold?

6. In exercise 3, if the 32 lbs. of weight is raised 1 foot, how far does the force move? How many foot pounds of work are done on the weight? How many foot pounds of work does the force do? Does the law of machines hold?

## Lesson XIV

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results of your experiment at home with the pulley?

*The Jack-screw.*—The jack-screw is used for raising very heavy weights. Probably some of you have seen them used to raise houses or barns when they were being moved, or when new foundations were being put under them. Let us examine a jack-screw to see if we can learn the relation between the weight and the force that would support it, if there were no friction. The friction is a very important factor in the jack-screw, and we will take it up later in the lesson.

In the last lesson we learned the very important law of machines, *i.e.*: “If there is no friction, the work done by a machine is equal to the work put into it.” We found also that work is measured in foot pounds. The work done by a machine is the weight  $\times$  the distance the weight



is raised, and the work put into it is the force  $\times$  distance the force moves. So we might state the Law of Machines as follows: "If there is no friction, the force  $\times$  distance the force moves is equal to the weight  $\times$  the distance the weight is raised." For example, if the force moves 50 times as far as the weight, then the force is  $\frac{1}{50}$  of the weight. Let us apply the law to the jack-screw.

*Experiment XIV.* — The Jack-screw and the Law of Machines.

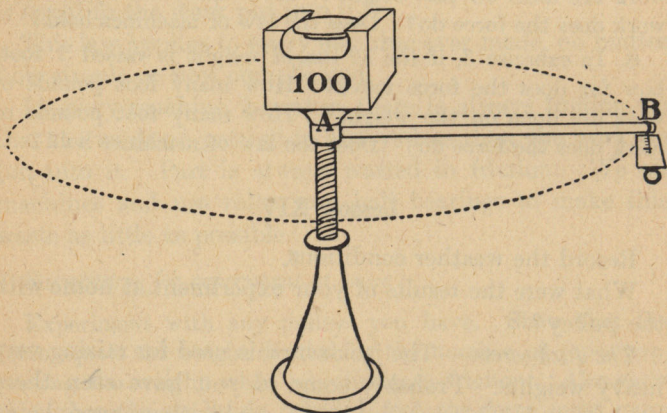


Fig. 16. Apparatus: Jack-screw, Weight, Spring Balance.

1. Notice that when the force at B makes one revolution, the weight is just lifted through the pitch of the screw, *i.e.*, from the top of one thread to the top of the next.

The force moves through the circumference of the circle of which AB is the radius, while the weight is lifted from one thread to the next. Measure AB and calculate the circumference of the circle of which AB is the radius. (Circumference =  $2 \times \frac{22}{7} \times AB$ .)

Measure the distance from the top of one thread to the top of the next, *i.e.*, the pitch of the screw.

Now use the law of machines given above to calculate the force that would just balance the weight used in (2) below. Force  $\times$  circumference of circle of which AB is radius = weight  $\times$  pitch of screw.

2. Find this force experimentally.

*Weight.*—Unscrew the head of the jack-screw, and weigh it and the handle; replace it and have a boy whose weight is known stand on the screw. The total weight is equal to the sum of these two weights. For example, if the head of screw and the handle weigh 20 lbs. and the boy weighs 100 lbs. the total weight is 120 lbs.

*Force.*—Attach the spring balance at B and pull gently, so that the total weight is slowly raised. Record the reading on the balance.

Now pull in the opposite direction, so that the weight is slowly lowered. Record the reading on the spring balance.

$$\text{Reading I} = \text{Friction} + \text{force.}$$

$$\text{Reading II} = \text{Friction} - \text{force.}$$

Subtract the second from the first and we get :

$$2 \text{ Force} = \text{Reading I} - \text{Reading II.}$$

or 
$$\text{Force} = \frac{\text{Reading I} - \text{Reading II}}{2}.$$

Compare this force with the value calculated in (1).

*Friction.* — You will notice that when we let go the handle of the screw, the weight does not go down. This is because the friction is holding it, and therefore the friction must be greater than the force that would balance the weight, if there were no friction. This is true of the jack-screw, no matter how great the weight is, because the friction increases with the weight.

Let us find the friction and compare it with the force.

Take the readings given in (2) above and add them together.



Reading I = Friction + force.

Reading II = Friction - force.

adding them,  $2 \text{ Friction} = \text{Reading I} + \text{Reading II}.$

$$\text{Friction} = \frac{\text{Reading I} + \text{Reading II}}{2}.$$

Is the friction greater than the force that would balance the weight if there were no friction?

*Suggestions for experiments at home :*

Make experiments similar to 1 and 2 with a jack-screw, if you have one. If not, you can make experiments with an ordinary bolt and nut as follows : Clamp nut in vise or other support. Screw in bolt part way with head above nut. Attach a weight to the bolt below the nut with a wire. Attach wrench to head as handle. Measure length of handle, pitch of screw and weight. Calculate the force, then find it experimentally.

Similar experiments may also be made with a revolving piano stool.

### Exercises

1. The handle of a jack-screw is 21 in. long, the pitch is  $\frac{1}{2}$  in., the head weighs 28 lbs., and a weight of 500 lbs. is on the head. What force would just balance the weight, if there were no friction?

*Ans.*

Force  $\times$  distance force travels = weight  $\times$  distance weight is raised.

$$\text{Force} \times 2 \times \frac{22}{7} \times 21 = 528 \times \frac{1}{2} \text{ or Force} = 2 \text{ lbs.}$$

2. The handle of a jack-screw is 14 in. long and the pitch is  $\frac{1}{2}$  in., the head weighs 28 lbs., and the weight on it is 500 lbs. What is the force that would support the weight, if there were no friction?

3. In finding the force experimentally, we find that the reading when raising the weight is 13 lbs., and when lowering it is 7 lbs. What is the force and what is the friction?

4. The handle of a jack-screw is 28 in., the pitch is  $\frac{1}{4}$  in., the weight of head is 20 lbs., and the weight is 3,500 lbs. What is the force that would balance this weight, if there were no friction?

5. If the reading on the balance when the weight is slowly lifted is 25 lbs., and when the weight is slowly lowered is 15 lbs., what is the force? What is the friction?

### Lesson XV

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results of your experiments at home with the jack-screw?

*Going up Hill.*—We all know that it is harder to pull a weight up hill than to pull it on the level. Let us answer the question. "How much harder is it?" This is somewhat hard to answer experimentally without the proper apparatus, so we will state the law first and then test it by experiment. If the road rises 1 foot in 10, then the increased force is  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the weight. If the grade is 1 ft. in 20 ft., then the increased force is  $\frac{1}{20}$  of the weight, etc. So that if a team of horses is drawing a load of 1 ton (2,000 lbs.), including the wagon, then it would take a pull of  $\frac{1}{10} \times 2,000$ , or 200 lbs. more to pull the wagon up a grade of 1 foot in 10 ft. than on the level. Similarly, if the grade is 1 foot in 20 ft., the pull would be  $\frac{1}{20} \times 2,000$ , or 100 lbs. more on the grade than on the level.

The Law is :

$$\text{Increase of Pull} = \frac{\text{Rise}}{\text{Length of Incline}} \times \text{Weight.}$$

Let us test this law by experiment. We will use a small board with a weight on it to represent the wagon and its load, and a larger board to represent the road.



*Experiment XV.*—Going up Hill, or the Law of the Inclined Plane.

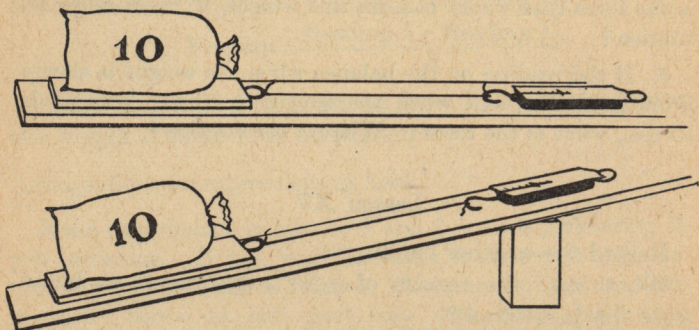


Fig. 17. Apparatus: Boards, Weight, Spring Balance.

The apparatus used in this experiment is usually called an inclined plane, and the law stated above, the Law of the Inclined Plane.

The apparatus consists of a board of planed wood about 5 ft. long and 8 or 10 in. wide, and a smaller board 1 foot long by 6 in. wide.

1. Weigh the small board ; place 10 lbs. on it, and find the force necessary to move it slowly along the large board when it is horizontal. You will notice that it takes a greater force to start the motion than to keep it going. Make your reading while the board is in motion.

2. Raise one end of the long board so that the lower side of the upper end is 6 in. above the table. This is a grade of  $\frac{1}{2}$  foot in 5 ft., or 1 foot in 10 ft. So we would expect the increased pull to be  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the total weight. Try it experimentally. Is the increase of pull  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the total weight? Does the law of the inclined plane hold?

3. Raise one end 1 foot. Calculate the increased pull. Find it by experiment. Does the law of the inclined plane hold?

*Suggestions for experiment at home :*

1. Make experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3.
2. If you have a small express wagon use it in experiments similar to 1, 2 and 3.

## Exercises

1. State the law of the inclined plane.
2. If it takes 2 lbs. of force to drag a 10 lb. weight along a smooth pine board, how much would it take if the board were inclined 1 foot in 10 ft. ?
3. A wagon and its load weigh 1 ton. If it takes 50 lbs. pull to move it on a level road, what is the total pull on a road which has a grade of 5% ; i.e., rises 5 ft. in 100 ft. ?
4. A barrel of oil weighs 240 lbs. It is being rolled up a plank into a wagon. The plank is 12 ft. long, and the bottom of the wagon is 3 ft. above the ground ; what force is necessary ?
5. If the wagon and load mentioned in exercise 3 go down a grade of 2%, how much would the horses need to pull ? If the grade were 4%, would they pull or hold back, and how much ?

## Lesson XVI

Record the weather conditions.

What were the results of your experiments with a wagon going up hill ?

In the last lesson we found that it was harder to pull a weight up hill than on the level, and that if, for example, the hill rose 1 foot in going along the incline 10 ft., that then the increased pull was  $\frac{1}{10}$  of the total weight. If the hill rose 2 ft. in 25 ft., then the increased pull would be  $\frac{2}{25}$  of the total weight, etc.

Let us look at this going up hill, or the inclined plane, from the standpoint of the law of machines. Let us suppose that a wagon and its load weighed 1 ton (2,000 lbs.),





knives on the sickle, then each knife has an average cutting force of 1 lb. Of course as there is always friction, the actual cutting force will be somewhat less than 1 lb.

### Lesson XVII

Record the weather conditions.

*Wheels.*—What is the advantage of having wheels on a wagon? We have all drawn weights on these small express wagons that girls and boys play with, and we know that it is easier to draw the weight when it is on the wagon than if we tried to drag it along the ground. Why is it easier? We know that it is because of the wheels; but how do wheels make it easier? Let us proceed to answer this question, but first let us settle why it is hard to drag a weight along the ground or pavement or side-walk. You will answer that it is because of the friction between the weight and the other surfaces. Friction is due to small projections in the two surfaces in contact; these projections strike against each other and retard the motion. If the weight and pavement were absolutely smooth it would take no force at all to keep the weight moving on the pavement, if it were once started, and if the pavement were perfectly level. How then does the wheel overcome the friction of the road? If you will examine Fig. 18 you will see that the wheel overcomes the friction of the road by lifting the weight over the projections.

The wheel is really a lever. The obstruction at A is the fulcrum. The force is applied along OF, and the force arm is the perpendicular distance AB from the fulcrum A to the line along which the force acts. The weight is at the axle O and acts along the line OD, therefore the weight arm is AC, the perpendicular distance from the



fulcrum to the line along which the weight acts. We see that the force arm is much greater than the weight arm, therefore the force is much less than the weight. Wheels then make it easy to draw a weight, because each wheel acts as a lever to lift the weight over obstructions.

*Friction at Axle.*—There is, of course, some friction at the axles, but this is small, because (a) the bearings are smooth and fitted to one another, and (b) they are oiled.

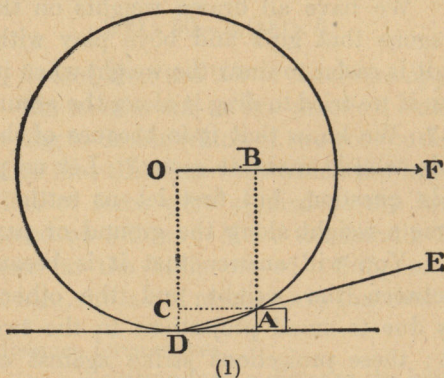


Fig. 18.

The oil clings to both surfaces, filling up the small hollows and covering the small projections, so that the motion really takes place between two surfaces of oil. It has been found by experiment that the friction at the axles of an ordinary wagon amounts to about 20 lbs. per ton of load, or only 5 lbs. per axle for the quarter of a ton on each axle.

*Size of Wheels.*—Is it better to use large wheels or small wheels on a wagon? We can answer this question by examining (1) Fig. 18, and (2) Fig. 18 a. Wheel (1) is twice the size of wheel (2), and the obstruction at A is of the same size in each case. Examine the weight arm AC

and force arm AB in each wheel. What do we find? We find that the weight arm is longer in (1) than in (2), but also that the force arm is much longer in proportion in (1) than in (2), and remains so, no matter how large the obstruction is. The ratio of the force arm to weight arm is greater then in wheel (1) than in wheel (2); therefore, the force required to pull a wagon with wheels of the size of (1) is less than if the wheels were of size (2); therefore, it is better to use large wheels on a wagon.

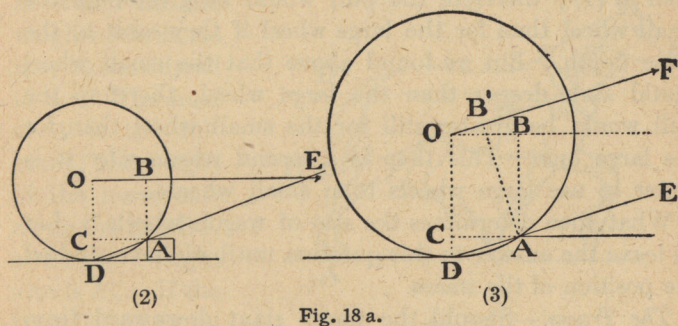


Fig. 18 a.

Let us look at the question from a different point of view. If a wagon is being drawn over a field or a soft road bed, will a wagon with large wheels sink as deep as a wagon with the same load, but with smaller wheels? We can answer this at once if we think of an exaggerated case. Suppose, for instance, that the wheels were as small as bed castors; we know that the wheels would sink deeper than large wheels. And the same reasoning holds if the wheels are not so small as this. The large wheel does not sink so far as a smaller wheel, because the curve of the tire is less sharp in the large wheel than in the small wheel, and it does not sink so far in order to get the same area of base to support the load.



What effect does this have on the force necessary to pull the load along? We know that it is harder to pull a load when the wheels sink into the road bed. But why is it? We can answer this by again looking at (1) and (2) Figs. 18 and 18 a. When the wheels sink into the road the load is really being pulled up-hill all the time. If we think of the wheels sinking to the depth represented by obstruction A in (1) and (2), the line DE in each case represents the real road bed and we see that the grade is steeper in (2) than in (1); therefore the pull would be greater for the small wheel than for the large wheel if they sank to the same depth. But we found above that the small wheel would sink deeper than the large wheel, therefore the pull would be greater still for the small wheel than for the large one. This then is a second reason why it is better to use large wheels than small wheels.

What then determines the size of wagon wheels? Let us leave the answer to this question until we have studied the position of the traces.

*The Traces.*—Should the traces slant downward from the hames to the whiffletree? It is the common practice to have them do so. Is this practice correct?

Let us consider the question first in connection with the wheel. If the road is perfectly rigid; that is, the wheels do not sink in at all, then there is no advantage in slanting the traces, as far as the wheel is concerned, because we wish to pull the load forward, and any upward lift is wasted.

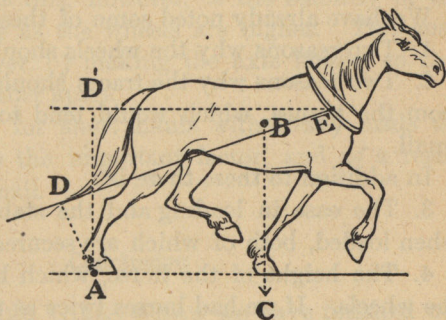
On ordinary roads, however, where the wheels sink in to a certain extent, the wagon is really going up-hill all the time, and it has been found by experiment that the pull is least when the traces are parallel to the grade up which the wagon is going. See (3) Fig. 18 a. DE is the grade and OF the slant of the trace. We can see why the

slanting trace OF is better than if it were horizontal along OB; in the latter case part of the force would be exerted to drive the wheel against the grade, while with the trace OF all the pull is exerted along the grade.

Now let us consider the question of the traces in connection with the horse (see Fig. 19).

The horse makes use of its weight in pulling a load. Consider that the centre of gravity of the horse is at B; *i.e.*, B is the point

at which all the weight of the horse may be considered to act. The hoof at A is the fulcrum ; the weight of the horse acts along the line BC, and the weight arm is AC. If the trace is horizontal the pull is along



**Fig. 19.**

the trace ED' and the pulling arm is AD'. Notice that if the trace is slanting as in ED the pulling arm is AD, and is shorter than AD'. If we are considering the effect of the weight of the horse on the pull, the shorter AD is the greater will be the pull, because according to the lever law:  $\text{weight of horse} \times \text{AC} = \text{pull} \times \text{AD}$ , as AD decreases the pull increases.

When one of the forefeet of the horse is on the ground as at C, Fig. 19, only part of the weight of the horse is used in pulling. You have probably noticed, however, that when a horse is exerting its greatest pull it lifts both forefeet off the ground and throws its head and body forward, so as to give the greatest effect to its weight.



We have found then two reasons why the traces should be slanted. First, because the wheels sink into the road and the pull on the trace is most effective when it is exerted in a direction parallel to the grade up which the wagon is really going. Second, because the horse uses its weight in pulling, and the sharper the slant of the trace the more effective its weight becomes.

Let us now study the question, What factors determine the size of wagon wheels?

We have already noted some of these factors, namely :

1. Two reasons why the wheels should be large.
2. Two reasons why the traces should slant downwards from the hames, which would tend to make the wheels small.

In addition to these there is :

3. The ease in loading and the stability of the wagon when loaded, both of which are secured by small wheels.
4. The height of the horse, which limits the height of the wheels. If we had horses twice as tall we could make the wheels twice the usual size.

Each of these factors has an influence on the size of the wheels, and in some cases one factor is more important than the others, as will be seen in the following :

In the ordinary wagon which is used for all purposes, the size of the front wheels is determined as follows: When the average height of the horses used is known, and the best slant of the traces for the ordinary condition of the road, then the axle of the front wheel may be as high as the lower end of the traces. A study of the force arm and weight arm in Figs. 18 and 18a shows us that there is no advantage in having the axle higher than this.

The back wheels in all wagons may be higher than the front wheels, because they are pulled by the reach which

is horizontal and higher than the front axle. And the axle of the back wheels may be as high as the line of draft along the reach.

In the stage coach and prairie schooner which are drawn by a number of teams of horses, the traces of the forward teams are horizontal, so that the slant of the traces is unimportant, and the front wheels may be as high as the point on the hames to which the traces are attached. Against this, however, is the stability of the load, which is less as the wheels are higher. This may be secured, however, by making the axle longer, so that the wheels are farther apart.

In trucks used for short hauls with heavy loads the ease in loading is the important factor, and as a result the wheels are small.

### Conclusion

TO THE BOYS AND GIRLS.—Now we have finished our study of some of the common tools, and we have found that they all obey some simple law, the most important of which are the Lever Law and the Law of Machines. You will notice that in all our work we started with our common knowledge of the tools; then, first, we made it more exact by measuring everything that had any bearing on the use of the tool; then, second, we tried to discover some law connecting the quantities measured; and third, when we had found the law we applied it to other tools, to see whether it would help us understand their use.

When we know the law which a tool obeys, we are the masters and the tool is our servant. We can calculate beforehand exactly what service the tool will give us, and what changes in it are necessary to adapt



it to other needs. This is the way that man has progressed in his conquest of nature, and has adapted the forces of nature to his own use. In general, the way in which this progress has been made is as follows: For long years, generally centuries, man has gradually learned by observation and experience more and more of some force of nature. This constitutes what we have called our common knowledge of the force; then some man appeared, wiser or more fortunate than the others, who by measurement and reasoning discovered the law which this force obeys. When the law was discovered man became the master, because then he was in a position to make this force of nature serve him.

Had we the time and space we might take up the study of many more tools. For example, pumps, wind-mills, water wheels, the hydraulic jack, the hydraulic ram, etc. After finishing tools, the next step would be to study the climate and the soil. This would lead to a study of the general physical properties of solids, liquids and gases, also to a study of heat, light and electricity. Under heat we would study the nature of heat and its relation to climate and soil, also systems of heating and heat engines, such as the steam engine and the gas engine. Under light we would study the nature of light; its effect on plant growth, also color, mirrors, lenses, the opera glass, telescope, stereoscope, camera, etc. Under electricity we would study lightning and lightning rods, also batteries, dynamos, motors, electric bells, electric lights, electric-plating, the telegraph, the telephone and the wireless telegraph.

For those of you who wish to continue this study it would be well to get a good text-book on physics, and the author of this chapter will be glad to recommend such a text-book to those who write to him.

Within the last hundred years mankind has made marvellous progress in the discovery of the laws which govern the forces of nature, and in the use of these forces. There is no doubt that great progress will be made in this direction in the next hundred years. The men and women who will be leading in this progress twenty years hence are now boys and girls in school, just like the boys and girls who are reading these pages, and it is quite possible that some of these readers may be leaders in the future. Some may discover new laws of nature, and all may do a great service by gaining a knowledge of the laws already known, and the way in which they affect their own lives and the lives of their neighbors, and by spreading this knowledge among their neighbors.

---

## ANSWERS

### Lesson I

- |                   |                   |            |
|-------------------|-------------------|------------|
| 2. 16 in. ; 4 in. | 3. 12 in. ; 6 in. | 4. 10 lbs. |
| 5. 4 ft.          | 6. 25 lbs.        |            |

### Lesson II

- |           |               |           |
|-----------|---------------|-----------|
| 1. 4 lbs. | 2. 2,250 lbs. | 3. 4 lbs. |
| 4. 2 lbs. |               |           |

### Lesson III

- |            |   |           |
|------------|---|-----------|
| 1. 6 lbs.  | 2. 19 lbs.  | 3. 6 lbs. |
| 4. 25 lbs. | 5. Yes, because one hand must exert much more force than the other. |           |



## Lesson IV

- |                        |                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|------------------------|
| 1. $4\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. | 2. $6\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. | 3. $8\frac{1}{4}$ lbs. |
| 4. 26 lbs.             | 5. 36 lbs.             |                        |

## Lesson V

To weigh a 200 lb. man.—Arrange the crowbar with the point on a strong support, and spring balance at say 60 in. from the point. Attach a swinging seat at 3 in. from the point. Find the force necessary to support the seat and bar, then let the man sit on the seat and his weight is 20 times the extra force indicated on the balance, because the force arm is 20 times as long as the weight arm.

- |                |            |                           |
|----------------|------------|---------------------------|
| 1. 16 lbs.     | 2. 26 lbs. | 3. 1,500 lbs.; 6,000 lbs. |
| 4. 10,800 lbs. |            |                           |

## Lesson VI

- |   |            |               |
|---|------------|---------------|
| 1. 10 lbs.                                    | 2. 14 lbs. | 3. 11.56 lbs. |
| 4. Less force required to support the weight. |            |               |

## Lesson VII

- |                               |                  |                   |
|-------------------------------|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. 3 lbs. 6 ozs.              | 2. 5 lbs. 6 ozs. | 3. 4 lbs. 5 ozs.; |
| 5 lbs. 5 ozs. ; 6 lbs. 5 ozs. | 4. 2 lbs.        | 5. 1 lb.          |

## Lesson VIII

- |                         |                        |         |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------|
| 1. $10\frac{2}{3}$ lbs. | 2. $1\frac{2}{3}$ lbs. | 3. Yes. |
| 4. 20 lbs.              | 5. 4 lbs.              | 6. Yes. |

## Lesson IX

- |                         |                        |         |
|-------------------------|------------------------|---------|
| 1. $11\frac{1}{3}$ lbs. | 2. $3\frac{1}{3}$ lbs. | 3. Yes. |
| 4. $1\frac{1}{6}$ lbs.  | 5. $9\frac{1}{6}$ lbs. | 6. Yes. |

Lesson X

1. 10 in.
2. 14 in.
3. 4 lbs.
4. First boy, 33 lbs., Second boy. 23 lbs.

Lesson XI

2. 15 lbs.
3.  $1,333\frac{1}{3}$  lbs.
4. 8 lbs.
5.  $888\frac{8}{9}$  lbs.

Lesson XII

1.  $4\frac{1}{8}$  lbs.
2. 180 lbs.
3.  $12\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. ;  $2\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.
4.  $6\frac{1}{2}$  lbs. ;  $1\frac{1}{2}$  lbs.

Lesson XIII

2. 15 lbs. ; 15 lbs. ; 3 lbs.
3. 8 lbs. ; 8 lbs. ; 4 lbs.
5. 2 ft. ; 30 foot pounds ; 30 foot pounds ; yes.
6. 4 ft. ; 32 foot pounds ; 32 foot pounds ; yes.

Lesson XIV

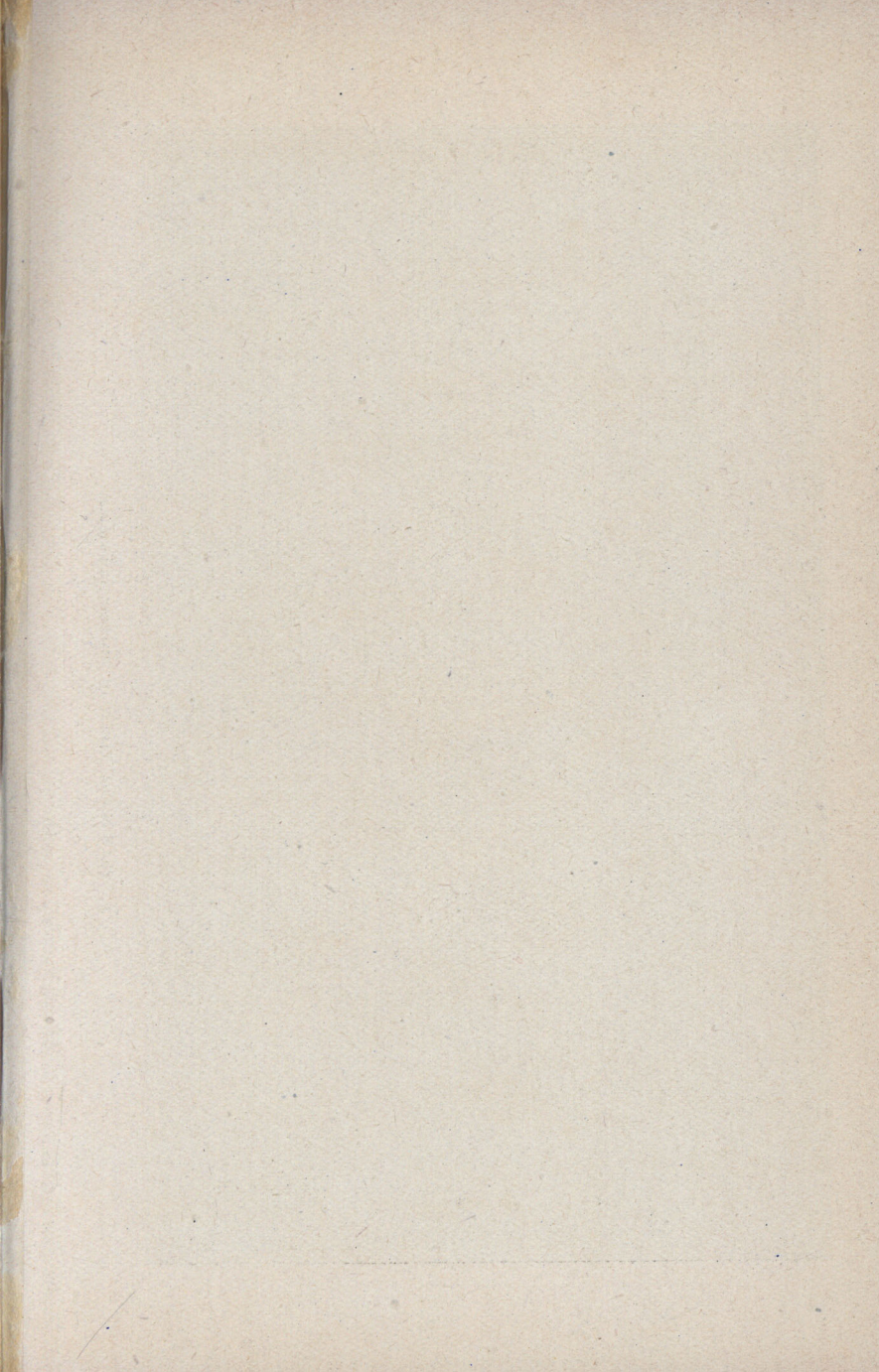
2. 3 lbs.
3. Friction, 10 lbs., force, 3 lbs.
4. 5 lbs.
5. Friction, 20 lbs., force, 5 lbs.

Lesson XV

2. 3 lbs.
3. 150 lbs.
4. A little over 60 lbs.
5. 10 lbs. ; hold back 30 lbs.











A STRAWBERRY FIELD IN BRITISH COLUMBIA.

# FRUIT RAISING IN BRITISH COLUMBIA

BY

MARTIN BURRELL, M.P.

---

IN British Columbia, horticulture as an industry is of very recent origin, but it has developed with marvellous rapidity.

The early history of horticulture in British Columbia is full of interest and romance. The introduction of fruit trees west of the Rocky Mountains in British territory dates from 1849. They were first brought from the territory of Washington by James Douglas, then Chief Factor of the Hudson's Bay Company, afterwards Sir James Douglas and governor of the colony, and planted on Vancouver Island near what is now the city of Victoria. Other small orchards were planted a little later, and after a time, when these trees were bearing, the Indians would come to the orchards and buy the fruit for twenty-five cents a bucket.

Little was then known of British Columbia as we understand the term. But the great rush of gold-seekers in 1849 was followed ten years later by another rush northwards when gold was discovered in large quantities in the Fraser river and its tributaries.

First came gold-mining, then followed the discovery of the wealth of the forests and rivers, and the establishment of the lumbering and fishing industries. Then, prompted by the demand for grain and vegetables, and



led also by that instinct which impels all men, in a greater or less degree, to the cultivation of the soil, those early miners turned towards agriculture, and slowly there appeared in the valleys a few scattered farms.

Finally, the natural love of fruit, and the call for it, directed attention to horticulture. "The orchard, more than almost any other thing," says Burroughes, "tends to soften and humanise the country, and give the place of which it is an adjunct, a settled, domestic look. The apple tree takes the rawness and wildness off any scene. On the top of a mountain, or in remote pastures, it sheds the sentiment of home."

### Early Conditions

The difficulties attending the planting of the earlier orchards in the province should make us honor those pioneers of fruit-culture whose efforts formed the beginning of orchard work in British Columbia. Two instances will suffice.

In the far-famed Okanagan valley, where miles of orchards now meet the eye of the traveller, the Fathers of the Mission on the east side of Okanagan lake planted the first small orchard of that district in 1862. The trees, some of which are still living, were packed in on horses' backs over the Hope mountains from the coast hundreds of miles away. Mile after mile, over a tiring and dangerous trail, with rushing streams to ford in the valleys, and snow to plough through on the mountain summits, the little trees were carried to their inland home, and there they still remain, a living monument to the faith and energy of the men of the early days.

It is a similar tale in other districts. In the vast Kootenay country, which comprises eastern British Columbia,

the commencement of horticulture came as elsewhere in the wake of a "rush" for gold. In the historic Wild Horse Creek district a small orchard was planted in 1872, and here, again, fruit is still being picked from some of the trees which survived the long journey of 450 miles on horseback. Gradually, as the country became settled, the orchards increased in number until by 1891 the area in fruit amounted to 6,430 acres. The next ten years witnessed the adding of only a thousand acres.

By this time, however, ample proof existed that the province was peculiarly adapted to horticultural work, and as men began to realize how important and valuable an industry it was, they commenced to plant larger orchards, and so rapidly has the work gone on during the last few years that there are now about 70,000 acres of orchard in the province.

It will be seen from what has been said about planting trees, that it was not until about ten years ago that the commercial aspect of fruit-growing began to attract serious attention. The increased product of the orchard tells a similar story of progress. The year 1897 saw the first shipment of fruit to the outside markets. In 1902 the production of fruit had risen to nearly 2,000 tons. By 1904 there were 3,000 tons produced, valued at a quarter of a million dollars.

In 1908 the orchard output was valued at much above a million dollars, and our fruits had found a ready entrance into the markets of the North-West, of far-off Australia, and of Great Britain. But the trees in the majority of these thousands of orchards are yet too young to bear fruit, and of the great districts suitable for fruit-growing, only a small part is now under cultivation. As yet, therefore, we are looking at the beginnings only of horticulture in the province.



### Area of Fruit Lands

Roughly speaking, there are about a million acres of land suitable for orchards in the settled portions of the province. The lands are so widely distributed, and so intersected by great ranges of mountains, that an accurate estimate is impossible. In the eastern portion is situated the vast Kootenay district, having within its boundaries many beautiful and extensive valleys, and penetrated everywhere by lakes and rivers of unsurpassed loveliness. Some of these valleys have sufficient rainfall to grow fruit successfully without irrigation, and this is particularly true of those lands which are adjacent to the larger bodies of water.

The district of Yale, which borders Kootenay on the west, embraces the valleys of the Okanagan, the Nicola, the Kettle River country, the valleys of the North and South Thompson, the Shuswap Lake district, the Similkameen, and a portion of the district lying north of Lytton, where the Thompson pours its waters into the Fraser river. Speaking broadly, this whole territory may be described as the semi-arid portion of British Columbia—a region characterized by a rainfall insufficient for successful horticulture without irrigation.

Within the territory so described, however, there are sections of country so well-watered by nature that they may dispense with irrigation. The Westminster district, comprising the great area on each side of the Fraser river and stretching from the coast eastward to Yale, embraces a vast quantity of rich agricultural lands, where there is a heavy rainfall and where, from a fruit-growing point of view, a careful attention must constantly be given to those fungous diseases which attack fruits and fruit-trees so much more readily in moist than in dry climates.

There remains on Vancouver Island a very large area of land admirably adapted for fruit-culture, an area to a considerable extent covered by a luxuriant growth of heavy timber, with a climate neither so wet as the coast mainland, nor so dry as the large interior districts. Apart from the large areas which have been referred to, there is a vast territory lying to the north of the province, only a small portion of which has been even explored, and in which the future will doubtless reveal the existence of thousands of acres suitable to the culture of many kinds of fruits.

### Conditions Governing Horticultural Work

The two factors which determine the question of successful fruit-culture are climate and soil, and the former is the more important of the two. British Columbia presents conditions so unlike those of Eastern Canada, that although the experience of a country older than our own in horticultural work is always valuable, yet we must solve our own problems and master our own peculiar conditions.

The moisture-laden winds of the Pacific Ocean exercise a potent influence on the climate of the coast districts. When they reach the coast range, these westerly winds are arrested and yield up their moisture, and we thus have the "dry belt" of the interior. But the higher currents of air carry the moisture over the coast range, where it is deposited in heavy snowfalls, which, melting, water the hillsides and the valleys. Hence it comes that the country presents alternately dry and moist regions.

Within these belts, however, there is such a wide difference of local conditions that in a sense each valley may be said to have a climate of its own, and it is for this



reason that no fixed and general rule can be applied to large districts in regard to the methods of fruit-culture, or to the varieties of fruits that are best suited to any given locality.

The above remarks, while applying chiefly to wide variations in moisture conditions, apply with equal force to questions of temperature, which plays so large a part in the success of fruit-growing. Let us take, as an illustration of the difference between British Columbia and Eastern Canada, the culture of the peach. In Ontario there are well-defined areas, within the limits of which peach-growing can be profitably carried on because of a uniform and mild temperature, and outside of which area peach-culture is a practical impossibility. The same cannot be said here.

It is true that in the southern Okanagan and Similkameen districts we have a fair measure of uniformity, and a mild enough winter temperature to ensure success in the growing of peaches. But throughout the Kootenays also, and in various sections of the dry belt far north of the Similkameen, we find sections in which the local conditions are most favorable for the culture of this tender fruit, though within perhaps a very few miles of those districts peach-growing might be most uncertain.

The irregularity of the air currents, owing to the broken and mountainous character of the country, accounts largely for these variations of temperature. Altitude, of course, has much to do with temperature, but here again the conditions are such that no one rule can be safely applied to any particular territory.

In the earlier days of horticulture in British Columbia, trees were always planted in the lower lands of the valleys. Gradually it has been found that the higher levels will all produce excellent fruit, so that the area of land suitable

for fruit-growing is much larger than was at first supposed, and orchards are now being profitably cultivated at a height of more than 2,000 feet above sea-level. Indeed, near the city of Rossland, in the Kootenay district, many varieties of apples, plums and cherries have been successfully grown at an elevation of 3,500 feet.

It will generally be found, however, that the higher the elevation, the more slowly do the fruits ripen. This seriously shortens the ripening season of some varieties, and for this reason and from difficulties consequent on very heavy snowfalls, it will probably be found that fruit-culture on a large commercial scale will be rarely carried on with success at elevations exceeding 2,500 feet, or at the most, above sea-level.

### The Site for the Orchard

In speaking of the site for an orchard, we do not mean the location. The latter term applies to the district, and the choice of the intending planter, in regard to location, may be influenced by the nearness to a railway, or whether he wishes to be in a moist or dry climate, and so on. By site, we mean the particular piece of land he will choose for an orchard in a given district.

The questions of soil, of wind, and of frosts, all affect the choice of a site. Such fruits as peaches, raspberries, cherries, thrive best in a warm and light soil. Pears and plums produce their best fruit on heavy soils, therefore the planter has to select the kind of soil suitable to the class of fruit he wishes to grow.

While the injuries to orchards from winds are not so great in British Columbia as they are in some other countries, yet they are occasionally severe enough to make it well worth while to select a site where the sweep of the



prevailing wind is broken by natural forest growths, or by some formation of the adjacent land ; or, if this is not possible, then to plant wind-breaks at the same time the orchard is planted.

Fruit trees growing close to a wind-break do not always thrive, owing to the fact that the wind-break itself robs the surrounding soil of food and moisture. Dense wind-breaks also tend to increase somewhat the dangers from fruit pests and disease, but these minor disadvantages are more than offset by advantages, some of which are as follows : A wind-break assists in retaining the snow and leaves, and thus tends to prevent deep freezing of the ground and excessive evaporation. It protects the blossoms from severe winds, and greatly lessens the amount of windfalls ; it reduces the evaporation of moisture from the passage over the orchard soil of hot winds in summer ; it prevents breaking of trees loaded with fruit or snow, and, in the case of very light sandy soil, it prevents the blowing away of much of the surface soil.

Throughout the valleys of a mountainous country there is always more or less danger to fruit from late spring and early autumn frosts, and even from summer frosts. It is a good practice to choose an orchard site, therefore, near a large open body of water, as the latter has the effect of modifying the temperature on the adjacent land. But it is not wise to choose for a site the lower levels of a valley which has only small streams, or even none at all.

Cold air is heavier than warm air, and will sink to the lower areas, causing not only late spring and early autumn frosts, but creating a much colder winter condition. It will generally be found that the bench lands, whether they are at an elevation of 50, or 250, feet above the valley bottom, will provide a more satisfactory site than the low lands.

By the aspect, or exposure, of an orchard is meant the direction or slope of the land. Near the larger bodies of water, a gentle slope towards the shore will secure most fully the benefits which come from the modifying effects of the currents of air passing over the water. In the colder parts of the interior a northward slope will prevent a too early blossoming, and thus nullify danger from spring frosts. Where severe cold is not feared, then a southern exposure will result in great earliness ; but many reasons exist in British Columbia for preferring a slight slope to a severe one, and for the purposes of tillage and irrigation, other things being equal, the more level the land is the better.

### Planting the Orchard

It has been pointed out that certain fruits do better on one kind of soil, and others succeed best on ground of a quite different character. It has also been stated that the climatic conditions vary widely in this province, even in a very short distance. For these reasons it is not advisable to give lists of varieties for the planter's guidance until he has a clear knowledge of his local conditions. He must consider his distance from market, his special climate and soil, and gather the fullest possible knowledge as to the behavior of the different kinds of fruit in his district, and he will then be in a much better position to decide as to what kinds and varieties to plant.

Every year many new varieties are brought to the attention of the public, and the inexperienced horticulturist is led to believe that his fortune is assured if he plants enough of some new kind which has been heralded with much flourishing of trumpets. Sometimes the new variety "makes good." More often it does not, and it is

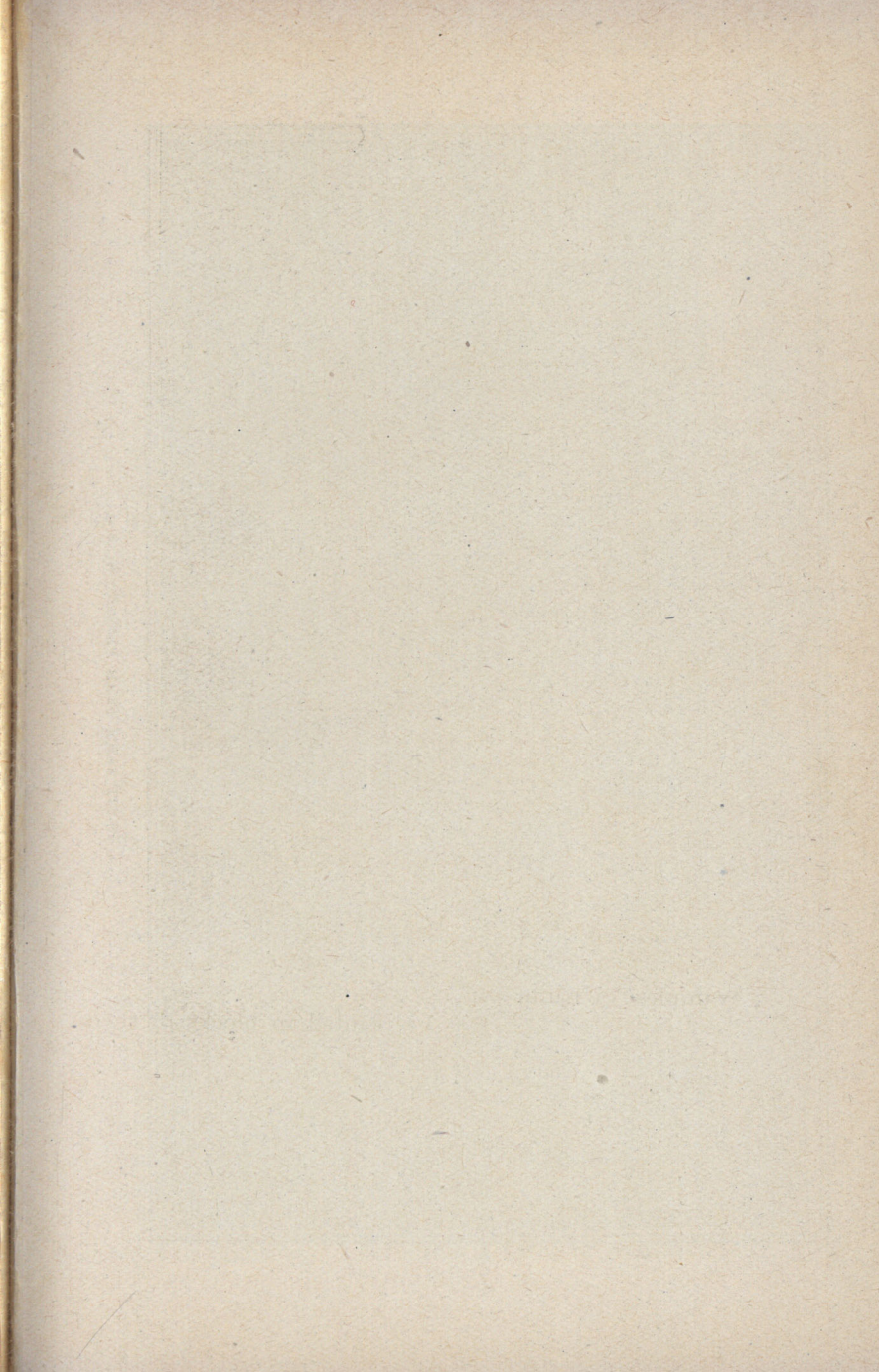


dangerous and expensive to plant heavily of a kind which has not been tested through a series of years and over a wide range of conditions.

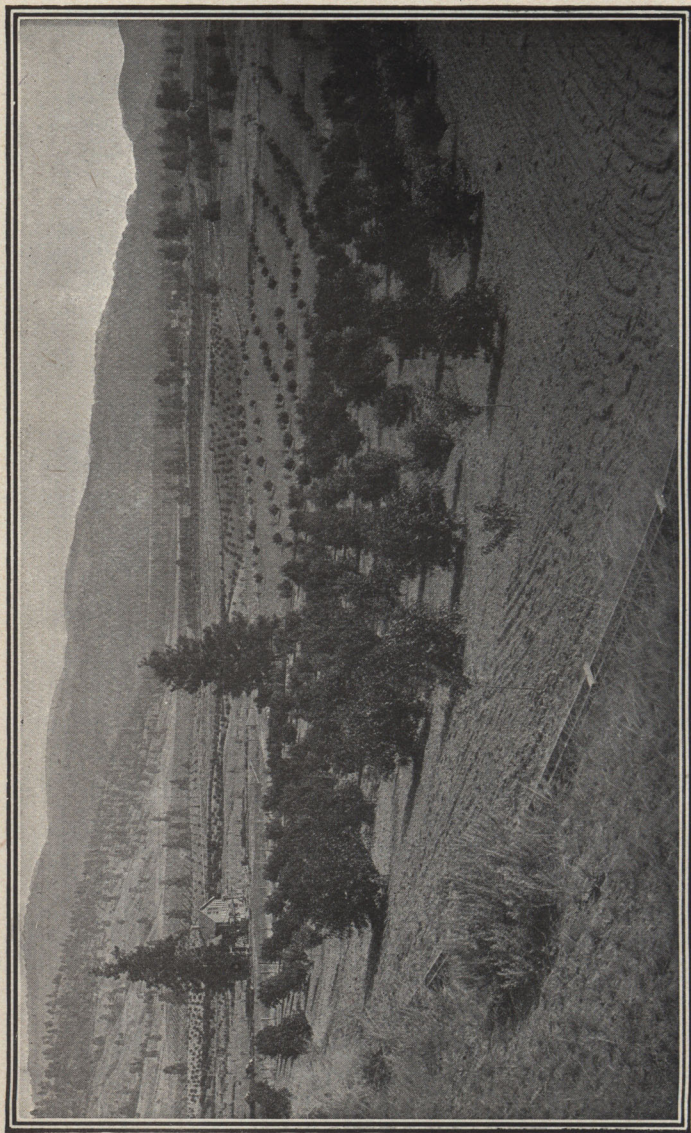
No less than 6,000 different varieties of apples alone have been named ; yet, in all the great fruit-growing territories of the western part of the continent, probably not more than twenty varieties have proved to be commercially profitable. The Spitzenburg, one of the most famous and valuable of apples, was originated more than 100 years ago, while the Jonathan and the Wagener, two other valuable kinds, had their origin more than half a century ago.

In planting, some attention must be paid to "pollination." The flowers of some fruits are what is called self-fertile, others self-sterile. Self-fertile flowers produce pollen, which, when it falls on its own pistil, or the pistil of another flower, causes the formation of seed, and leads to the development of the fruit. This question of inter-pollination is illustrated very clearly in the case of the strawberry plant. Some varieties have no pollen-bearing organs, and if a large patch of such "self-sterile" varieties were planted by themselves, no fruit at all would be set. They must be planted close to "self-fertile" varieties, and then the inter-pollination goes on and a good crop of fruit results.

The Bartlett pear and the Northern Spy apple are examples of fruits which are more or less self-sterile, and should not therefore be planted in blocks by themselves. The Baldwin apple and the Flemish Beauty pear are examples of those which are self-fertile. We know too little of this important subject, but it is safest in any case not to plant large blocks of one variety together, as the crossing of the pollen from one variety to another by the agency of wind or insects is always helpful in the setting of a good crop of fruit.







A FRUIT FARM NEAR PENTICTON, B.C.



Many people, when setting out orchards, plant what are called "fillers." A "filler" is a tree which is supposed to come into bearing earlier than the main orchard, and they are planted in between the permanent trees, the intention being to cut them out when the permanent orchard begins to bear. In general, the practice should be discouraged. Few people have the wisdom to cut out the "fillers" when the right time comes, the consequence being that all the trees are crowding each other. If the practice is followed, however, then it is better to choose as "fillers" early-bearing and compact-growing varieties of the same kind of fruit. Thus, if the orchard is of apples, the best "filler" is an apple like the Wagener, which is an early bearer and a close-growing, compact tree.

When peach trees are planted as "fillers" in apple orchards, there are two evils. First, the peach is a vigorous and quick grower, and in the course of five or six years begins to rob the apple tree of light, food, and moisture. Secondly, in the semi-arid districts the irrigation required by the peaches and the apples differs to some extent in both time of application and amount, and so a mixed orchard of this kind is more difficult to manage.

Cultivation is made more easy in an orchard when the rows of trees are quite straight. Pains should always be taken, therefore, with the marking out. In very big orchards it is advisable to get the assistance of a surveyor. In smaller orchards the work can be done with the help of a long, heavy wire marked at the distances required. Two men stretch the wire and a boy puts in a stake at each notch or mark. Stake out the whole field before commencing to plant. It is easier to remedy mistakes before than after planting.

The use of a "planting board" greatly assists in the work of planting. The board is three or four feet long,



three or four inches wide, and has a notch cut in the middle, and two small holes bored through the ends at equal distances from the notch. The man who digs the holes for the trees places the "planting board" on the ground, fitting the stake (where the tree is to go) into the notch. Then he puts a small peg through each hole, lifts the board off and digs the hole. When the tree is planted, the board is replaced and the tree is held so that the small trunk just fits into the notch. No "sighting" is required and the work can be done quickly and very satisfactorily. For the best results it is well to plant one-year-old cherry and peach trees, and either one or two-year-old pear, plum, and apple trees.

Never plant trees older than two years, as nothing is gained, and the older tree takes longer to recover the transplanting process. In districts where the soils are light and inclined to be dry, it is better to practise deep planting, setting the young trees two or three inches deeper than they stood in the nursery. The secret of success in planting is the thorough packing of the earth round the roots. The soil should be solidly tramped in the hole except the top two inches, which may be left loose to prevent evaporation. This at once brings us to the great question of

### Tillage of the Soil

The chief reasons for tilling the soil are the putting of the ground into the best mechanical condition for plant growth; the destruction of weeds, which interfere with the growth of the tree or plant; and the saving of soil moisture. Accompanying a proper system of tillage in wet districts must be a thorough drainage of the lower soil to remove the excess of water which is injurious to plant growth.

Weeds have been called the lazy man's blessing, as he would not till the soil if it were not for the necessity of getting rid of the weeds. But tillage is concerned with more important things than the mere destruction of weeds, and to be successful in horticultural work the other reasons for careful tillage of the soil must be understood.

Water is a vital necessity to plant growth of all kinds. The succeeding chapter on "Irrigation" will deal with artificial application of water to orchards in the semi-arid districts of British Columbia, but throughout the interior there exist thousands of acres of fertile land where irrigation cannot be practised, and where the rainfall is so moderate that it becomes supremely important to save as much as possible for the trees and plants. This saving is effected by thorough tillage.

After the melting of the snows, and after the rains of late winter and early spring, the soil sometimes holds a large amount of water. By capillary attraction this moisture is constantly being drawn to the surface of the soil and evaporated in the air. So great is the loss of water in this way that on a warm day when the wind is blowing, as much as forty or fifty tons of water may be evaporated from a single acre. The prevention of this loss is one of the chief objects of tillage, and it can readily be seen that it is of supreme importance to commence orchard tillage early in the spring, before this heavy evaporation takes place.

By tilling, or cultivating, the surface soil is finely divided, and the layer thus stirred becomes a mulch on the lower soil, breaking capillary attraction, and greatly lessening the escape of moisture. Careful experiments have shown that when ground was cultivated three inches deep, and twice a week, a saving of more than thirty per cent. of the soil moisture resulted.



Shallower and less frequent stirrings resulted in greater loss ; and though these figures might not hold good under all conditions, yet the lesson to be learnt is plain, viz., that, weeds or no weeds, if the fruit trees are to have the benefit of the much-needed water, there must be early, frequent and thorough tillage. Again, thorough cultivation of the soil puts it into a better mechanical condition, by presenting a greater surface for the roots to feed over, and it has also a chemical effect on the soil, setting free plant food which would otherwise be unattainable by the roots.

All fruits require the following fertilizing elements : Nitrogen, potash and phosphoric acid. Lime also plays a prominent part, especially in the case of stone fruits, by strengthening the stems and woody portions of the tree, and sometimes assisting the early ripening of fruit. Nitrogen promotes leaf-growth, and without vigorous leaf-growth, trees will not thrive.

If the trunk, branches and leaves of a tree were all burnt, there would remain in the ashes what is called the mineral part, and of this, potash is the larger portion. Potash also constitutes half of the ash of the fruit itself. Phosphoric acid, though of less importance for fruit than for grain, is also needed.

Taking the ordinary market value of these mineral foods, it has been estimated that while wheat yielding fifteen bushels to the acre would, in the course of twenty years, take out of the ground, both in grain and straw, a total of \$128.23 in nitrogen, potash and phosphoric acid, yet the total value of these foods taken out by an apple orchard in the same time, would mount up to \$207.45. It is necessary, therefore, to till the soil so that all these mineral foods in the soil can be easily got at by the roots, and it will also be necessary in time to add them to the soil.

The use of "cover crops" is intimately connected with tillage. These crops are those sown in the orchard for the following purposes: To check late growth of the trees; to assist in retaining the snow; to protect the root of the trees in the colder climates; to improve the mechanical condition of the soil; and finally to provide additional plant food when the cover crops are plowed under.

Of all the cover crops used, those which belong to the clover family are best for general orchard work, as they have the power of storing nitrogen in their tissues, this nitrogen being taken from the air and worked into the plant system by means of minute bacteria. One of the best plants for a cover crop in British Columbia is the hairy vetch, which is related to the clovers. If this is sown in the orchard towards the end of the summer, then it will answer nearly all the purposes specified above.

### The Irrigation Question

The preceding chapter has shown the important part that thorough tillage plays in the preservation of soil moisture. Owing to the scantiness of the rainfall through large districts of the province, and owing also to the unequal distribution of that rainfall, it becomes necessary to irrigate in order to obtain a full yield of the various crops. In the course of their growth all plants throw off through their leaves a great amount of water.

If you hold a clean, cold mirror in front of a person breathing, the surface becomes at once clouded with the moisture from the breath. So, too, if you hold the same mirror close to the foliage of a growing plant, the moisture escaping from the plant will also cloud the mirror.

This moisture is gathered from the soil by the fine roots, and after serving its purpose in the development of the



structure and life of the plant, it is evaporated through the leaves. So great is this evaporation, that in the process of making a single pound of dry vegetable matter, from 300 to 500 pounds of water are evaporated.

Two illustrations will show clearly how great this amount is. If three tons of perfectly dry clover hay were taken from one acre of ground, these three tons would have taken from the soil and evaporated into the air at least 1,400 tons of water. Again, a large and vigorous apple tree will throw off through its leaves on a single hot summer's day about 250 gallons of water. In addition to this large amount of moisture which is evaporated during our hot summers, there is also to be considered the moisture required in the formation of the fruit itself, and fruits of all kinds are made up of from 85 to 95 per cent. of water.

It will be seen, then, how important in a very dry climate is a proper supply of water for successful fruit-culture. The practice of irrigation is not only widely spread over the world to-day, but it has been a feature of agricultural work in dry countries for thousands of years. In Egypt, in China, and in other countries remains of great irrigating canals and reservoirs are still found, which prove that the ancient peoples had a thorough knowledge of this art.

To-day in southern Italy nearly all fruit-culture is carried on by irrigation. Of all countries in the world India has the largest area under irrigation and the biggest works. Millions of acres are irrigated by means of canals and reservoirs, and millions more are watered by pumping from wells. In the United States there are over 4,000,000 acres under irrigation ; and, to sum up, it may be stated that at the present time all over the world crops are grown on 40,000,000 acres which, but for irrigation, would not be profitably productive.

### Amount of Water required for Fruit

The question of how much water we should use in irrigating fruit is impossible to answer in exact terms. The character of the soil has much to do with the amount. Then the water required from irrigation will vary according to the rainfall and the system of tillage practised by the horticulturist. And finally in orchards of varying age, and containing fruits which in some cases ripen early, and in some late, the quantity required will greatly differ. Only a rough estimate may be made for the semi-arid districts of the province, but before giving such an estimate it is important to discuss briefly the ways of measuring water for irrigation purposes.

In British Columbia water was first used, not for agricultural, but for mining purposes. Consequently a system of measurement was adopted which made the miner's inch the unit of measurement. The miner's inch is, for many reasons, not a good method of measuring water for irrigation work, and it will be found more satisfactory to adopt a measurement of depth, such as the "acre-foot," or else a unit of measurement by flow, such as the cubic foot per second. An acre-foot means enough water to cover an acre of ground to the depth of twelve inches. A cubic foot per second means a discharge of water equal in volume to one cubic foot in a second of time.

Having now referred to these three terms, miner's inch, acre-foot, and cubic foot per second, the following table will show what relation they bear to each other, and will make clearer the subsequent paragraphs. It should be stated that in this table the term gallon means imperial gallon, and that ninety days is the length of time usually taken as the irrigating season.



### Table of Water Measurements and Equivalents

1 cubic foot of water is equal to 6.25 gallons.

1 miner's inch is equal to the flow of 1.68 cubic feet per minute.

1 miner's inch is equal to the flow of 10.5 gallons per minute.

1 acre-foot is equal to the flow of 2.1 gallons per minute for 90 days.

1 acre-foot is equal to a miner's inch on 5 acres for 90 days.

1 cubic foot per second on 100 acres is equal to 1 miner's inch on 2.8 acres.

1 cubic foot per second on 100 acres for 90 days is equal to 1.78 acre-feet.

1 cubic foot per second on 178 acres for 90 days is equal to 1 acre-foot.

In the earlier days of fruit-growing in British Columbia, it was customary to assume that a miner's inch to the acre was a proper amount of water to use. Let us see what the custom is where large irrigation systems are established. In Alberta the allowance of water thought necessary for the growing of grain and hay is one cubic foot per second for 100 acres. A similar amount was decided on by the United States commission for Central California.

As will be seen, by the above table, this quantity would be equal to 1.78 acre-feet, or in other words means a depth of a little more than 21 inches of water on one acre, and also means that, with such a proportion, a miner's inch would irrigate 2.8, or nearly three acres. In parts of California one cubic foot per second is made to serve 250 acres, and at such a rate a miner's inch would have to serve seven acres.

Where water is very scarce and is used with great care, a still greater acreage is served by the cubic foot. Taking 100 cases from all parts of the world, and leaving out those which apply to rice culture and sugar-cane, which require very heavy watering, it is found that a cubic foot per second is made to serve on the average 117 acres.

It may be said with safety, then, that for general orchard work in British Columbia, one cubic foot per second for 100 acres should be an ample supply of water in ordinary seasons, and doubtless in many cases an acre-foot would be sufficient, which would mean that a cubic foot per second would serve 178 acres, or a miner's inch would serve five acres.

### The Practice of Irrigation

Very little irrigation is done by means of pumping in British Columbia, though it will eventually be found that thousands of acres can be profitably irrigated in this way, which are to-day barren and unprofitable. Irrigating waters are brought from the lakes and rivers by means of large open ditches, wooden flumes and pipes, or the waters of the smaller streams are conducted to the land in a similar way.

If the soil is porous in character the open ditch involves great loss of water by seepage, and the cost of a flume or pipe would soon be repaid by the saving of water. It is better not to irrigate too freely newly-planted orchards, for if the upper soil is very moist the trees will be likely to develop a shallow rooting system. On the other hand, if the sub-soil is fairly moist, and the surface less so, the roots will tend to penetrate deeply, the tree will be firmer in the ground, and the roots will have a larger area of soil in which to gather both food and moisture, and will be better able to stand a season of drought.

The cost of distributing water through an orchard with an uneven surface is so great that no work will pay better than that of levelling the ground as far as possible before planting the trees. The furrows which conduct the water from the head ditch or flume should not be too long, or



the trees at the top of the row will get too much water and those at the bottom not enough. In heavy soils a deep conducting furrow is best, as the water penetrates such soil slowly but will always rise quickly to the surface by capillarity. In light, sandy soils a shallow furrow is better.

In running the irrigating streams through the orchard it is advisable to have a very slight fall, thereby conveying the water slowly and getting the fullest use. In such cases the furrows can be allowed to be fairly full. If the fall of the land is such, however, as to cause the water to wash the soil down with it, then very small streams must be used, and the ideal way would be to run streams just strong enough to reach the lower end of the furrow.

In all cases thorough cultivation should be practised after irrigating. Several irrigations without subsequent tillage means that a very large waste of water is going on through evaporation. Over-irrigation means waste of water, waste of labor, the development of surface roots, and an inferior grade of fruit. Careful irrigation means the control of the crop regardless of the absence of rainfall, a healthy development of the tree, and the successful production of a fully-matured crop.

### Pruning the Orchard

No attempt to describe in detail the various systems of pruning the apple and other fruit trees will be made in the following paragraphs, for this would involve the writing of a whole book. The student must learn this from other sources. But some of the general principles underlying the practice of pruning will be touched upon, and some general suggestions made.

Amongst the many reasons for pruning are the following: The production of larger and better fruit; the keeping of the plant within manageable limits; the removal of unnecessary and injured parts; the training of the plant to some desired form.

In nature the plant and the tree produce fruit for the purpose of ripening seeds with the object of reproducing the species. Quantity of seeds, therefore, is the primary object, not size or quality of fruit. But the fruit-grower, on the other hand, is not so much concerned with the production of a great quantity of seeds as he is with the production of more attractive, larger and better fruit, and in the attainment of this object pruning occupies a highly important place.

What we call fruit is the fleshy and edible covering of the seeds. This is largely made up of water, but of water after it has been transformed in various ways by passing through the system of the plant or tree. A deformed, stunted, or sickly tree may produce fruit with many seeds, but it cannot produce what we call fine fruit. One of the primary objects of pruning, therefore, is to assist in the production of a healthy, vigorous wood-growth, to encourage regularity of cropping and bring about an increase in the size of the fruit without exhausting the tree.

There is naturally an even balance between the growth of the branches and the roots. When transplanted, some of the tree's roots are cut off and the balance is destroyed. It becomes necessary, then, to prune off a considerable portion of the top when planting the young tree. Every year it is necessary to cut off part of the previous year's growth, partly because pruning increases the vigor both of the root system and of the top, and partly because it is desirable to form the head of the tree in such a way



that the future branches will not crowd each other, will be able to stand rough winds without breaking, and will grow in a manner convenient for tillage, for spraying, and for the gathering of the fruit.

From the earliest days of the tree the orchardist should have a definite idea in regard to the shape he wishes the tree to assume as it grows older. In the pruning of fruit trees in British Columbia it is strongly advisable to form low-headed trees. This reduces the danger of injury from "sun-scald" to which the exposed trunks of high-headed trees are liable in the latter part of the winter when the sun is strong and the sap is not yet moving underneath the bark.

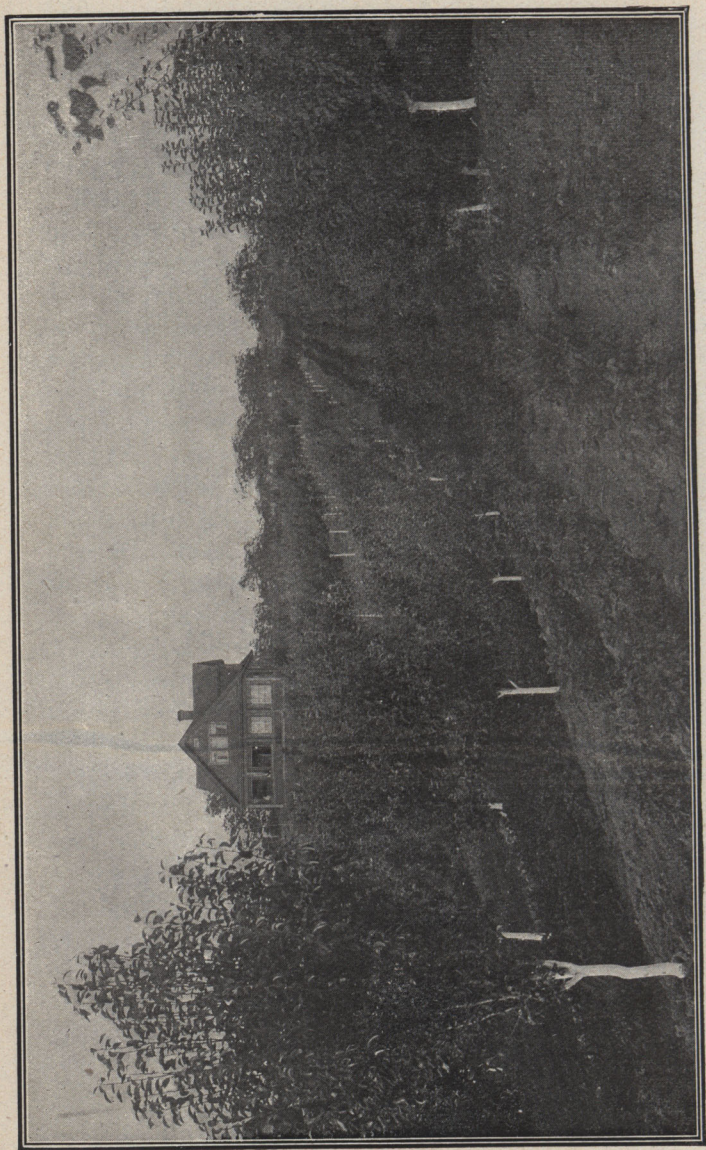
Whether the grower desires to train the tree in a pyramidal form (in which case he encourages the growth, year after year, of a central stem), or whether he prefers the vase, or open-head form, it is always important that no two of the lower, or main, branches of the young tree should be allowed to spring from the trunk opposite each other, otherwise crotches are formed which will lead to the splitting of the tree when a heavy load of fruit has to be borne up.

Heavy pruning reacts at once on the roots, which immediately greatly increase their growth, and there follows at once a correspondingly large growth of the top. So the old adage is true that weak-growing kinds should be heavily pruned, and strong-growing kinds lightly pruned.

Different trees and bushes require varying treatment. Gooseberry and currant bushes need merely an annual shortening of the previous year's growth and the cutting out of the older wood which has borne fruit heavily. Cherry trees require careful shaping when young, and light pruning when older, as the trees suffer injury from







A FRUIT ORCHARD AND DWELLING IN BRITISH COLUMBIA.

the discharge of much gummy matter when severe cutting of the limbs is practised. Peaches, currants, raspberries, quinces and grapes all bear their fruit on the growths of the previous season, therefore heading back of the annual growth thins the crop for the coming season.

In districts where the winter cold is severe, the pruning of fruit trees, especially of young trees, in the late fall or early winter may be followed by serious injury. In such districts it is well to do the pruning in the later winter when the severest weather is over. Though careful training of the tree when young should obviate the necessity of taking off large limbs at a later age, yet this is sometimes necessary.

The process is not so harmful as many people imagine, provided the work is done properly. All over the tree, between the bark and the inside wood, or "heart," there moves constantly in the growing season what is known as the "cambium" or sap, serving the needs of the buds and the leaves. When the season's growth has been finished a portion of the cambium forms bark, while the rest forms wood. When a tree is wounded the cambium at once endeavors to cover and heal the wound. A branch cut from a tree leaves a wound, or exposed surface. It is most important that this wound should be healed, otherwise frost, rain and sun affect it injuriously, fungous growths lodge on the exposed surface, and disease penetrates to the heart of the tree.

It is plain that if a limb is cut off in such a way as to leave a stub of even an inch or two in length, the sap or cambium, in a sense, side-tracks the stub, for there are no leaves or buds to invite its flow, and the process of decay rapidly takes place. It is of prime importance to prune in such a way that no part of the amputated limb shall be left on the trunk. The cut should be made close to,



and even with, the trunk, regardless of the size of the wound.

It will then be found that the cambium will gradually flow over the edges of the exposed surface, and in the course of a season or two even a big wound will be completely healed over with new bark. While this is taking place danger from weather or fungous injuries can be prevented by the application of a dressing to the exposed surface of the wound, and of all dressings one of lead paint will be found to be most effective.

### The Necessity of Thinning Fruit

One of the objects of pruning is the production of larger and better fruit. This object is the sole reason for thinning, and few operations pay the horticulturist in British Columbia better. It is the formation and ripening of seeds which make the principal strain on the constitution of a tree, and not the development of the fleshy part of the fruit. In the west, fruit trees have a tendency to come into bearing earlier and to produce heavier crops than they do in the east, and thinning is imperative if the orchardist wishes to prolong the life of his orchard and to produce a fine quality of fruit.

Everybody recognizes the soundness of the theory of thinning, but few carry the theory into thorough practice. This is partly because thinning is thought to be a very expensive process, and partly because, when the fruit is very small, to thin out one-half or three-quarters of the crop looks like needless waste.

As to the expense, the fruit has to be picked sooner or later, and if it can be shown that, when harvest time comes, a smaller number of specimens on a thinned tree

will give a greater weight than the larger number from an unthinned tree, then it is obvious that the cost of thinning need not be considered.

Below are the results of some experiments in thinning carried out by the writer on peach trees, which show in the clearest way the great profit in thinning. The trees selected were Hale's Early, six years old, and as nearly alike as it was possible to get them. No. 1 tree was thinned when the fruit had just firmly set, but was quite small. No. 2 was thinned two weeks later when the peaches were considerably larger, and No. 3 was left unthinned. When ripening time came the fruit was carefully gathered, weighed, and sorted out into three grades, the third grade being unsaleable. The results were:

	Grade 1	Grade 2	Grade 3	Total weight of fruit.
	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.	lbs.
No. 1 . . .	107	75½	2	184½
No. 2 . . .	85½	73	0	158½
No. 3 . . .	20	93½	21	134½

The experiments showed that earlier thinning paid best, and they give a striking proof of the profitable nature of the thinning process. It should be said that on the thinned trees there were far fewer specimens, and therefore less strain on the vitality of the tree, and also that the fruit was more regularly distributed, and therefore less strain on the branches from the weight of fruit.

Peaches should be thinned to about four inches apart, and apples about six inches apart. Variety and age of tree make some difference as to methods, but it cannot



be too strongly insisted on that, if the fruit-grower in British Columbia desires attractive, large, and first-class fruit, and wants to keep his orchard healthy, vigorous, and productive, then he *must thin*. It is not enough to believe in the theory of thinning; he must rigidly practise it.

### Pests of the Orchard

After selecting a proper site for the orchard, planting the right trees and practising thorough tillage, the fruit-grower will still find that other matters have to be carefully attended to before he can produce first-class fruit. He has to keep constant watch for those insect and fungous enemies that ceaselessly prey on both trees and fruit. Insect enemies may be broadly divided into two kinds, those that attack the tree or plant, and those that attack only the fruit.

The life of an insect has four stages: first the egg, then the larva (known sometimes as a grub, maggot, caterpillar or worm); then the pupa or chrysalis; then the last stage, when the insect becomes a beetle, butterfly, bug, wasp, or some other species. The second and the fourth periods of an insect's life are those in which it generally does the greatest harm, and chiefly the second or larval stage; but the fruit-grower should learn to know the life-history of all the chief orchard pests so that he will recognize the same insect in its various life-periods.

Another way in which insects may be divided into two great classes is according to the formation of the mouth. Some have jaws, and bite off and swallow the food, whether it is leaf or fruit, while others have a beak-shaped mouth, which enables them to pierce the leaf and take their nourishment in a liquid form.

Those which belong to the first class are fought and destroyed by means of poisons applied to the plant in the form of a fine spray. The most valuable of these poisons is arsenate of lead. Those which belong to the second class, like plant lice, scale insects, and so on, are fought by applying strong washes composed of soapy or oily mixtures which kill by contact.

In British Columbia we are fortunate enough not to have some of the worst pests which attack orchards, but as the area of fruit-growing is extended the pests will come. Insect and fungous pests are inevitable, and the wise man will accept the fact and be prepared to fight them in an intelligent way. Fungi are low forms of plant life which prey on other plants, and they include in their ranks such things as molds, smuts, mildew, rot, and many other diseases which affect fruit and fruit trees.

These fungous diseases enfeeble the tree, disfigure the fruit, and prevent the latter from keeping. Fungi reproduce themselves by means of spores, or minute seed-like organs, which they throw off into the air by unnumbered thousands, and it is necessary therefore to fight them in the early stages of their development. This is done by spraying with various kinds of mixtures, among the best known of which are the Bordeaux mixture and the lime and sulphur wash.

In fighting these pests and acquiring information about them, the fruit-grower in British Columbia is assisted by the Board of Horticulture. This Board was created in 1904, and its members, consisting of officers of the Agricultural Department and practical fruit-growers, frame regulations for the betterment of the fruit industry, and, by means of a chief inspector and staff, all fruit and all nursery stock coming into the



province are thoroughly examined for insect and fungous diseases before they can be distributed.

It is due in a large measure to this work that the fruit orchards in British Columbia are at the present time so free from the worst orchard pests. Information on spraying and the best methods to fight the various pests of the orchard can be obtained free by any fruit-grower from the chief inspector.

### Picking, Packing and Marketing of Fruit

We have now touched on the various methods by which the fruit-grower brings an orchard into bearing. But the battle is only half over. What good is it to plant, cultivate, prune and thin if the fruit itself is not picked and packed properly and sold to advantage? If it is worth while to expend great care in growing good fruit it is also worth while to make it repay you for all your trouble. There is always a demand for the best. And the best must be picked and packed and marketed in the best way.

In British Columbia we are fast nearing the time when the packing will be done by co-operative methods and by expert packers. The selling of the fruit will also be done by co-operation, but no amount of co-operation will do away with the necessity of the grower knowing how to handle his product in such a way as to enable it to be placed on the market in an attractive condition. The great problem to be solved is to get the fruit into the hand of the purchaser in as nearly as possible the same condition that it was in when it hung on the tree.

As we cannot describe in detail the method of handling the numerous kinds of fruit, and as the apple is the

great staple amongst fruits, and constitutes far more than half our orchard acreage, we will take the handling of the apple as an illustration. In picking apples, as in picking all fruits which have a distinct stem or stalk, the stalk should be allowed to remain on the fruit. The tearing out of the stalk means too often the breaking of the skin and danger of decay in that portion of the fruit.

A basket lined with cloth or burlap, with swinging handle, and a wire hook attached, is invaluable for picking purposes, and all bruising should be carefully avoided. It is a difficult thing to decide just when to start picking the fruit. Early picking reduces the danger of windfalls, but it must always be remembered that apples color up better if allowed to hang long on the tree. Some varieties, like the Spy, cling firmly to the branch; others, like the Wealthy, the McIntosh Red and the Wagener, show a tendency to drop before they are ripe; judgment must therefore be used as to the time of picking.

It will be found that with choice fruit it often pays to make two pickings, taking first the ripest and largest, and leaving the rest to color more fully and increase in size. Strong orchard boxes are often used, holding from a bushel to a bushel and a half, with convenient handles, and these are brought into the packing-house and are emptied into bins, made by stretching stout canvas on a framework of wood, or else placed on the benches, the packer taking the fruit straight from the orchard box into his commercial apple case.

In British Columbia all apples are packed for market in boxes of which the inside measurements are 10 inches by 11 by 20. It is very important to see that an even size and quality exist all through the package, and that



the fruit is so tightly fitted that no shaking may take place to injure it, however far the package travels.

There are two styles of packing apples, known as the square and the diagonal. In the square or straight pack the side of each apple presses directly on the side of another; in the diagonal pack the side of one apple presses in between the two adjoining apples.

There are dozens of different ways in which the apples are fitted into the case, but the chief thing is to keep to one size of apple through the whole case. Some people use a "grading board," which is a board with four holes corresponding to the size of the apples required by different styles of pack. The packers can then quickly test the size of the apple, though men expert at the work can soon tell by the eye exactly the size of the apple required.

Apples are packed in such a way that there are three tiers, three and a half, four, four and a half, or five, according to the method of packing; and if a certain style of packing is adopted the exact number of apples in the box is known, so that eventually it is probable that apples, like oranges, will be marked according to the number in the case.

Honesty and thoroughness are the foundation of the successful marketing of apples, as they are the foundation of the successful selling of everything. Thousands of miles away the apple-eater buys the case of apples. If he finds that every apple in the package is just like those he sees on the top row, and that they all are what the marking of the package says they are, he remembers the name of the grower or the association, and buys again and again from the same source.

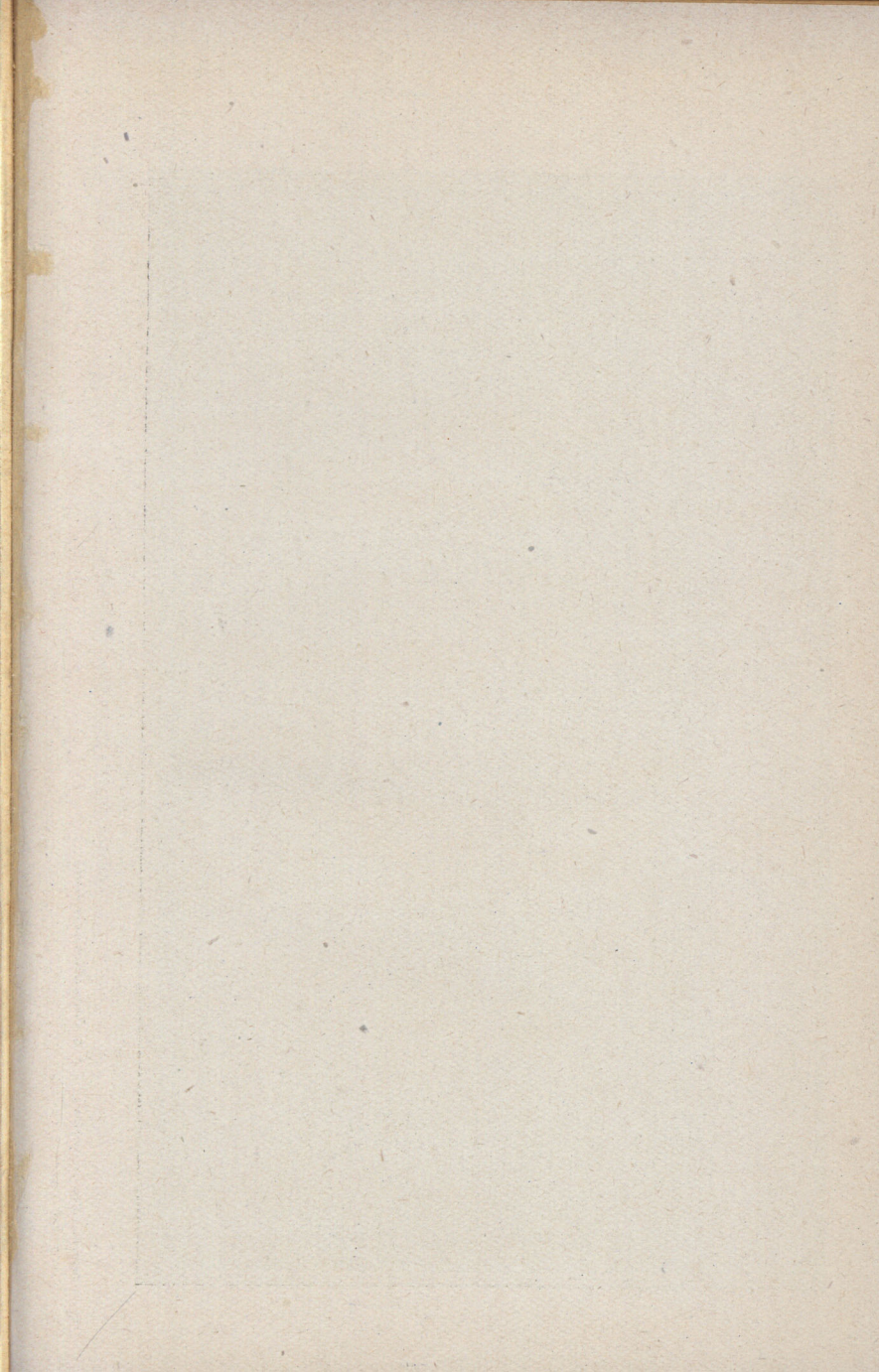
In the great prairie country to the east of the Rocky Mountains there are thousands of people who will never

grow fruit but who will be eaters of fruit. In far-off Australia there are thousands more who will buy fruit from this country when their own is not ready. Across the Atlantic there are thousands of people who are also fruit-eaters and fruit-buyers.

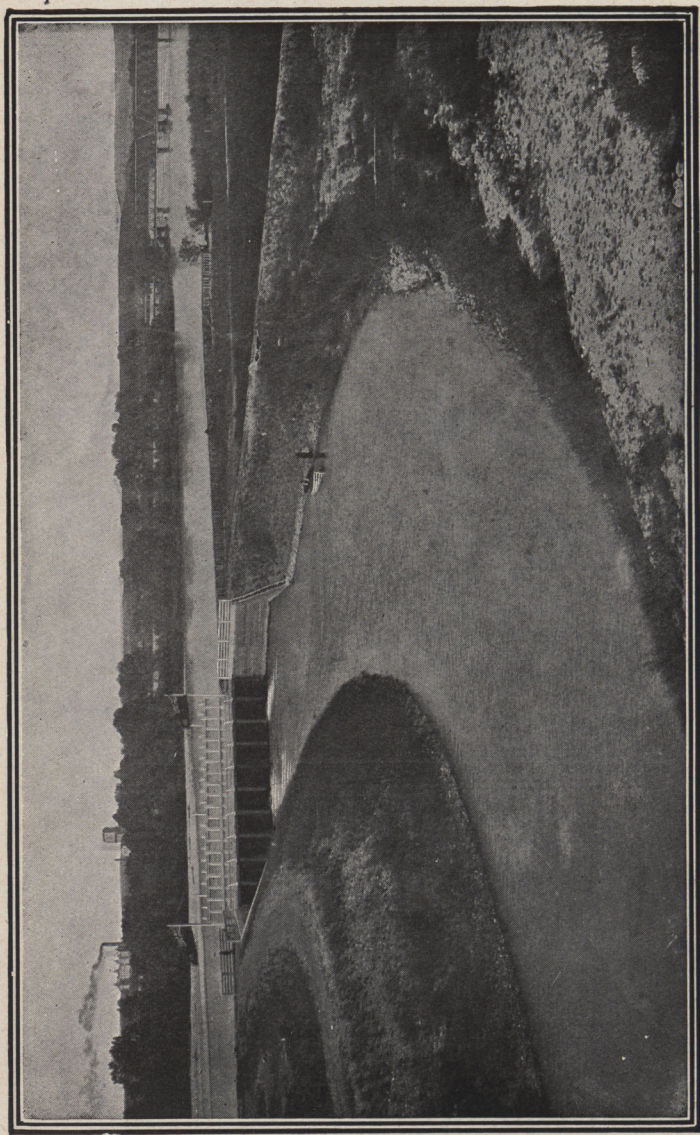
We have in this great and lovely country of British Columbia a glorious climate and a fertile soil. Nature has done her part: it remains for man to do his. There will be difficulties to be faced, obstacles to be overcome, but a man is not a man until he has learnt to overcome obstacles and difficulties. Those whose thoughts turn towards horticulture as a life occupation, can well turn to it in this province with the assurance that intelligent and persevering work in the culture of fruit, and alertness and honesty in marketing it, will bring a generous reward.











HEADGATES, MAIN CANAL, CALGARY.

*Reproduced by permission of C. P. R. Colonization Department.*

# IRRIGATION\*

BY

H. W. E. CANAVAN, C.E.

---

“Gurgling waters allay the thirsty lands,  
Therefore decoy the torrents over the plains.”

—VIRGIL'S *Georgics*.

## Benefits of Irrigation

IRRIGATION (from the Latin, *Irrigo*, to moisten) is the art or process of supplying water to arid or semi-arid places in such manner and quantity as to create or increase productive qualities in the soil. It is one of the most ancient of agricultural methods, its inception dating back to prehistoric times, and being practically coincident with man's first efforts in cultivation.

Irrigation was extensively practised in Egypt at least 2,000 years before Christ, and in China, India, Persia and Africa its use was well understood for many centuries before the Christian era. The knowledge of irrigation spread from Egypt to Southern Europe, where it was practised by the Romans with great skill, and by them it was introduced into France and England. In America, the ancient Aztecs and Peruvians constructed immense irrigation works, the ruins of which stand to-day as monuments to their cleverness and industry.

---

\*NOTE.—It is not expected by the Department of Education that this article on Irrigation will be required as a subject for High School entrance examination, but the publishers have inserted it in the hope that it will be found of advantage to those of mature years who are engaged in fruit-growing, etc., in the arid regions of British Columbia.



The benefits of irrigation are manifold. The percolation of the water softens and disintegrates the soil, rendering it permeable by the plant roots ; it furnishes plant food additional to that which the soil may possess, and assists in its even distribution over the irrigated tract ; and, where an excess of organic matter exists, oxidation is stimulated, producing carbonic acid and nitrogen, two essentials to plant life.

Irrigation offers to capital one of the most profitable of all investments. It is estimated that the money invested in irrigation in India, Egypt, Italy, Spain, France and the United States amounts to \$600,000,000, while the value of the crops produced from these otherwise worthless lands aggregates the extraordinary sum of \$675,000,000 per annum. This may seem an exaggeration, but it only represents a return of a little over \$12 per acre. The great value of irrigation is well illustrated in the case of the great cattle ranges, where, under natural conditions, twenty to thirty acres are required to support one animal, while the same soil irrigated and sown with alfalfa will feed two to three cows per acre.

Various estimates of the total of land under irrigation have been made, but none of these can be accepted as conclusive.

The best authorities credit the various countries as follows :

India . . . . .	25,000,000 acres.
Egypt . . . . .	6,000,000 "
Europe (Italy, Spain, France and Great Britain) . . . . .	5,000,000 "
Japan . . . . .	8,000,000 "
United States . . . . .	4,000,000 "
Argentina . . . . .	1,750,000 "
Australia . . . . .	700,000 "
Canada . . . . .	1,000,000 "

These figures are founded on statistics collected at different periods embracing a decade, and, as irrigation areas are being constantly increased, they can only be taken as approximate. It is impossible to estimate the extent of irrigation in China, Java, Madagascar, Thibet, Algiers, and other countries in which it is known to be practised; but assuming that the irrigated lands of the world amount to 160,000,000 acres (and formidable as this total may appear in type), it would only represent a square of 500 by 500 miles, a very inconsiderable portion of the arid regions of the earth.

It may therefore be assumed that all that has been accomplished in fertilizing the soil by the use of water through all the centuries up to the present is only a tithe of what is yet to be done. Again, when it is considered that to supply water to 250,000 square miles at the rate of two inches once in ten days would require a stream fifty feet deep and over a mile wide, equivalent to three times the capacity of the Nile flowing at maximum flood, the most difficult problem confronting the irrigation engineer will be realized.

Air, heat and water are the prime necessities of animal and vegetable life, and they are so intimately associated in the grand scheme of nature that one cannot exist without the others. Accepting the presence of water on the earth as an established fact, it is evident that the action of heat and air upon the ocean supplies the clouds with moisture in the forms of rain and snow which are distributed over the earth, rendering it habitable and fruitful.

The amount of water which is taken from the ocean each year by air and heat would cover the whole surface of the globe to a depth of three feet, and would be sufficient to fill six lakes as large as Superior every



year. When rain falls, a considerable percentage is absorbed by the soil and gives life to the trees and plants; another portion is sucked up by evaporation to replenish the clouds; while the remainder finds its way by creek and river to the ocean.

In the Arctic regions and in mountainous districts, nature stores vast quantities of water in glaciers, which not only melt and act as feeders to the oceans and streams, but, moving slowly and with irresistible force, disintegrate the rocks, grinding them into sand, clay and silt, which are carried off by the streams and deposited in the lower levels, creating in course of time new areas of cultivable lands.

With the wholesale destruction of forests in many countries, the water supply is rapidly diminishing, and hundreds of thousands of acres of fertile lands are being rendered arid and worthless. Conservation of the forests is therefore absolutely necessary in order to perpetuate permanent sources of water; and the question of forest preservation is claiming the earnest attention of scientific men and statesmen in Europe and America.

The importance of protecting the sources and headwaters of streams by preventing the denudation of those regions is well understood, for where such waste has been permitted it has been followed by a drying up of rivers and the creation of desert spaces in previously fertile districts. It is not to be assumed that systematic protection of water sources would seriously interfere with lumbering operations, as it is amply demonstrated that a judicious thinning out of the mature, and therefore the most valuable, trees greatly stimulates forest growth.

Fluctuations in the rapidity and volume of flow of streams are other difficulties with which irrigation experts have to contend. Few, if any, rivers can be depended

upon to supply a steady, unalterable volume of water. Sudden variations in temperature or rainfall, protracted seasons of drought followed by torrential rains, will often so disturb accepted conditions as to undo the work of years. These phenomena are held by some authorities to occur in regular cycles, but no two can agree as to the exact periods of recurrence.

The best talents of irrigationists are directed to minimizing the effects of these sudden changes by the construction of storage dams, reservoirs, weirs, and other contrivances designed to secure a dependable supply of water under all conditions, while providing adequate outlets for the surplus; but even the most skilfully planned works are often found wanting when put to severe tests.

### Use of Water

It is impossible to lay down set rules as to the quantity of water which will produce the best results, the intervals at which water should be applied, or the most effectual means of application. These and many incidental details must be mastered by persistent and intelligent individual practice, for methods successful in one district may prove disastrous in another; indeed, cases are not wanting in which adjoining fields call for totally different treatment. Climate, composition and nature of the soil, the contour of the ground, and other local conditions must be studied until the operator has satisfied himself as to the best way by which to secure the most beneficial effects upon the soil and the crops.

Irrigation, though an invaluable aid, must not be looked upon as a short cut to success in agriculture. It is a science which calls for exhaustive experiment and close observation of cause and effect, and which



can only be made completely successful when supplemented by thorough cultivation of the soil. No amount of irrigation can produce good crops on a poorly tilled field.

Arid soil irrigated for the first time, sometimes takes very large quantities of water in order to thoroughly saturate the subsoil. Gradually, as the soil becomes perfectly moistened, the amount of water needed becomes less and less. A great deal depends upon the thoroughness, or lack of cultivation, for where the soil is persistently tilled it will be found that less water is required. The quantity of water required to produce each pound of dry matter in vegetables, fruit and cereals is placed by experts at 300 to 500 tons.

### Measurement of Water

There are various measurements in use in computing the quantity of water required to irrigate a given area. Of these the acre-inch and the acre-foot are most commonly accepted. An acre-inch is a quantity of water which would cover one acre to the depth of one inch, equal to 113 tons or 27,150 gallons. An acre-foot is the amount which will cover one acre to the depth of one foot, equal to 325,800 gallons.

A miner's inch in British Columbia represents a flow of about 100 cubic feet per hour, equal to 623 gallons, or 14,950 Imperial gallons per day of 24 hours; in Colorado 17,000 gallons in 24 hours. Another unit of measurement which is widely used, is the cubic foot per second, called the "second foot" or "cu. sec." The number of second feet flowing in a canal is the number of cubic feet which pass a given point in a second.

Standards of measurement vary considerably, but the following arrangement gives a few convertible units of measure :

- 1 second foot, or cu.sec. = 450 gallons a minute.
- 1 cubic foot = 75 gallons a minute.
- 1 second foot = 2 acre-feet in 24 hours.
- 100 California inches = 4 acre-feet in 24 hours.
- 100 Colorado inches =  $5\frac{1}{2}$  acre-feet in 24 hours.
- 1 Colorado inch = 17,000 gallons in 24 hours.
- 1 British Columbia inch = 100 cubic feet per hour, or 14,950 gallons in 24 hours.
- 1 second foot =  $59\frac{1}{2}$  acre-feet in 30 days.
- 2 acre-feet = 1 second foot a day, or .0333 second feet in 30 days.

### Duty of Water

The ratio between a given quantity of water and the area of crop which it will mature, is defined by irrigation engineers as "the duty of water." In determining the duty of water required for a definite area of land many things have to be considered. Rainfall, to which the artificial supply must be supplementary; altitude, latitude, temperature, character of soil, slope of the land, extent of cultivation, humidity, evaporation, drainage and capillary action, have all to be dealt with before a formula can be adopted as to the actual requirements of the case.

Assuming all the conditions mastered, the following figures will give an idea of the amount of water necessary to properly irrigate a definite area of land in a moderately humid climate. There are 6,272,640 square inches in an acre. One inch of water, or a stream one inch wide and one inch deep, flowing at a rate of four miles an hour, will give 6,082,560 inches in twenty-four hours. Such a stream will therefore cover nearly an acre one inch deep in twenty-four hours.



A quantity of water equivalent to a continuous flow of one cubic foot per second, during an irrigating season of one hundred days, will usually irrigate from fifty to sixty acres. The water is not applied continuously but at regular periods of from two to five days, distributed over the season of growth.

Strange as it may appear, the duty of water is found to be greater in some of the more arid regions, in which a dry atmosphere and clear sky would lead one to anticipate that evaporation would be exceptionally rapid. It is difficult to assign a satisfactory reason for this difference, though many theories have been advanced, none of which are entirely convincing.

The most reasonable and most commonly accepted is the difference in soil texture, which in humid regions is more compact and less permeable than the lighter soils of the dry districts, which allow the water to distribute itself more evenly and deeper so that it does not return to the surface rapidly, but remains stored in the subsoil. This conjecture is strengthened by the fact that plants which spread their roots near the surface in humid districts develop longer roots, which penetrate the soil to considerable depth, in the arid districts.

### Irrigation Works

The construction of irrigation canals and aqueducts presents many complex features to the irrigation engineer. He must survey not only the surface of the country through which the water is to be conveyed, but must also make himself familiar with subsoil conditions, by carefully studying the composition of the various strata which are to form the banks and bottoms of his dams and conduits.

In ordinary canals, according to the nature of the soil and its consistency, the loss of water by absorption, seepage and evaporation, amounts to from 20 to 40 per cent. of the volume of flow, so that to provide a uniform supply of water to a given area great care must be exercised in calculating the dimensions of ditch necessary. Where these preliminaries are neglected or overlooked, great damage may be caused, as careless irrigation often results in producing flocculent salts, or alkali, on the surface of the soil, which is thus rendered barren and unproductive instead of being enriched.

Alkali consists chiefly of common salt (chloride of sodium). The most harmful of these is the sodium carbonate, commonly called "black alkali." Other salts present in alkali are manganese sulphate and the salts of potassium, of which the nitrates and phosphates are highly beneficial to plant life when not associated with the harmful salts.

Alkali is caused by defective drainage, natural or artificial, and principally in localities where the subsoil is impervious, so that the sub-surface water saturates the soil by rising to the surface. Evaporation follows and the salts contained in the water are deposited as a residue on the surface. In the absence of drainage, and where the quantity of water is too great to be evaporated, ponds and swamps are formed, and the soil becomes "water-logged," this condition being assisted by the rainfall.

Various methods are used for the prevention of alkali. The reduction of evaporation to a minimum by mulching and deep cultivation, the growing of deep-rooting plants, and drainage, are the principal of these, while in the case of black alkali the application of chemicals, such as lime, gypsum, etc., is practised. Another effectual remedy for alkali is leaching, which consists in flooding the surface



and draining off the water before it soaks into the soil. In all cases where drainage is defective or cannot be provided, great care should be exercised in applying water.

The method most generally adopted for supplying water for the irrigation of large areas is to divert the whole or a portion of a river from its natural channel and lead it through lateral canals and distributing ditches to the district intended to be watered. This diversion is usually effected by damming the stream at a point where the greatest head of water may be obtained.

The diversion canals and laterals, which supply the distributaries, are constructed along the higher levels so as to secure an efficient fall, and thus facilitate the distribution of the water over the irrigable fields. In the construction of these dams, provision is invariably made for sudden freshets, etc., in the form of waste gates through which the surplus water is allowed to flow, and precautions are taken in the shape of drains in the irrigated area to prevent water-logging of the soil by seepage or the application of too much water, the accumulation of alkali, the pollution of drinking water and the creation of malaria.

One of the best examples of this system is the Sirhind Canal, taken out of the Sutlej River at Rupar, Punjab, India. This canal is designed to have a capacity of 6,000 cubic feet of water per second, and extends for forty-one miles as a single main trunk; there it is bisected. Three miles further, on the western trunk, it is divided again, forming two canals of 100 and 125 miles respectively, while the eastern branch is divided into three of 90, 56 and 25 miles respectively. There are in the whole system 41 miles of main canal, 503 miles of main branches, and 4,407 miles of main distributaries, supplying 800,000 acres of irrigable land.

This same system of irrigation has been followed in several large undertakings on this continent, the most extensive of which is the Canadian Pacific Railway Company's irrigation project in Alberta, which is the greatest irrigation scheme in America. The intention is to supply water to 1,500,000 acres, and there are already completed 967 miles of canals and distributaries, capable of irrigating 350,000 acres. This is known as the Western section.

The water is divided from the Bow River, two miles east of the city of Calgary, through a canal seventeen miles long, which is 60 feet wide at the bottom, 120 feet in width at the water line, and carries a volume of water ten feet deep. This main canal empties into a reservoir for which a natural depression has been utilized, and holds a body of water three miles long, half a mile wide, and forty feet deep. From the reservoir the water is taken out in three branch canals, which convey it to the different districts to be irrigated.

These canals are each about thirty feet wide at the bottom and carry eight feet of water. Their combined length is 150 miles. Distributing ditches aggregating 800 miles in length, take the water from these branch canals and deliver it on each quarter section of 160 acres to be irrigated. When the central and eastern sections are completed there will be 2,900 miles of main and secondary canals and distributaries carrying sufficient water to irrigate 1,500,000 acres. The ultimate cost of construction is estimated at \$5,000,000.

In addition to the Canadian Pacific Railway Company's undertaking, there are in Southern Alberta and South-western Saskatchewan 480 miles of canals and ditches capable of supplying irrigation to 625,000 acres.

In British Columbia this method of irrigation has been in use for many years, on a small scale, and as the work



of individual farmers and fruit growers. More recently capital has been enlisted to irrigate large sections in the Okanagan, Kamloops and Nicola districts, and lands formerly given up to cattle ranges are being rapidly transformed into fruitful orchards, which produce apples, pears, plums and peaches of exceptionally good quality.

In many cases, owing to the topography of the country, it is impossible to secure a water supply by the diversion of a stream into a canal, and it is necessary to devise some other method. The ingenuity of the irrigation engineer is often taxed in solving the problem of conveying water from mountain lakes and streams to supply the needs of more or less distant irrigable areas. Precipitous mountain slopes, deep chasms and canyons are some of the obstacles which have to be overcome by viaducts, flumes, syphons and tunnels.

### Location and Construction

In utilizing the waters of a mountain torrent, the most simple and direct method is to tap the stream at a favorable point by a pipe line, or to divert it into a flume, which, skirting a mountain side, conveys water down to the level country. Flumes are, as a rule, constructed of wood, but sometimes the nature of the locality necessitates the use of cement or masonry. The pipes used are of various materials — cast iron, steel riveted sheet iron, cement (vitrified), and wood, dependent upon the pressure which they are calculated to withstand. Cast iron and steel pipes are generally used under great heads of pressure exceeding 200 feet, but under certain conditions well-constructed wooden pipes are found to be more economical and quite as serviceable.

The considerations controlling the kind of pipe to be used must invariably be the cost of material delivered on

the ground, the expense of putting it in place, the durability desired, and the duty to be performed. A well-built and well-laid wooden pipe will last with proper care for forty years, which is quite as long as the life of an asphaltum-lined sheet metal pipe. The life of a sheet metal pipe depends largely on the coating, and when this is not thoroughly applied, the pipe may rust and become worthless in a few years. The size of pipe used depends upon the pressure which it will have to bear, elaborate formulas of which have been prepared by eminent hydraulic engineers.

The velocity and discharge of water flowing through a pipe are dependent upon the head or pressure for a given diameter and also upon the frictional resistance which the interior surface offers to the water. Thus the discharge for a given head may be increased for the same diameter of pipe by using a pipe with smoother lining, with the fewest possible obstructions in the way of bands and points, and the straightest possible alignment.

In the construction of wooden pipe lines, the pipe should be kept full of water and under pressure at all times. Under these conditions the wooden shell is always thoroughly saturated; if it be allowed to dry out it will deteriorate rapidly. Where water is conducted down hill on a very steep grade it is often found necessary to check or regulate the velocity of flow by the installation, at intervals, of catch basins or chambers which arrest the flow and ease the pressure on the pipes, acting in the same way as the safety valve of a steam engine.

Storage reservoirs are employed to insure a constant supply of water at all times, regardless of the amount of rainfall. They may be classified as follows: natural lake basins; valleys or canyons through which a stream flows; depression on bench lands, and reservoirs which are



wholly or in part artificially constructed. The best and cheapest of these is a natural lake basin, where often a simple drainage cut or an easily constructed and inexpensive dam may give a large storage capacity.

Reservoir sites on natural drainage lines, where streams flow through deep valleys or defiles, are the most abundant, but usually the most costly owing to the precautions which must be taken in building a dam to provide for the discharge of flood water. Almost equally numerous are those natural depressions found on prairie and bench lands, the utilization of which as storage basins is comparatively inexpensive.

Usually a deep drainage cut or the construction of a cheap earth embankment is all that is required, as little or no provision is necessary for the passage of floods. The greatest expense connected with this class of reservoir is the cutting of a supply canal from the most convenient source of water supply. In all cases the construction of shallow reservoirs is deprecated, as the losses from evaporation and percolation are likely to be considerable, and the growth of weeds is encouraged where the depth of water is less than seven feet.

Due care should be exercised in choosing a reservoir site, in order that all requirements may be provided for. The relation of the site to the irrigable land, its relation to the source of supply, and the topography and geology of the surroundings should be carefully considered. In taking account of the relation of the reservoir to the irrigable land, the site should be located at an altitude above the land to be irrigated sufficient to allow of the delivery of the water by natural flow, and it should be as near as possible to the land, so that the loss in transportation may be as little as possible. The preliminaries are simplified where the source of supply is derived from

a perennial stream, the volume of which is more than sufficient to fill the reservoir at all times. Where the supply is intermittent, provision must be made for a reserve of water upon which to draw in dry seasons, and where the stream is subject to floods, special precautions must be taken.

The available volume of a reservoir is always less than its full capacity, because some portion is below the outlet sluices and because some part of the bottom will become filled with sediment—this sometimes amounts to one-fifth of the height of the dam. Borings or test pits should be sunk at various points on the site of the reservoir, to ascertain the character of the soil and the nature and dip of the underlying strata. The geological conformation may either be found favorable or so unsuited as to be irremediable by engineering skill.

A synclinal valley, *i.e.*, one in which the strata dip towards and beneath the lower lines of the valley, is the most favorable, as little or none of the stored water can escape by percolation which on the other hand contributes to the volume of the reservoir.

An anticlinal valley is the least favorable for a reservoir, as the strata dip away from the site and would serve as sub-surface channels through which the water would percolate and be drained off. Often a depression occurs in a formation which presents a condition intermediate to those just mentioned, the strata on one side dipping towards the valley, while the strata on the other side dip away from it. In such a case it is probable that the loss of water from seepage or percolation on the one side would be compensated for by that coming from the other.

Deep beds of gravel or sand forming the bottom of a reservoir are objectionable, as a great deal of water is apt to be filtered away. When such a condition is met with,



the bottom should be given a covering of puddled clay or cement. The cost of storage reservoirs varies greatly according to location, materials employed and cost of labor, running all the way from 80 cents to \$245 per acre-foot of water stored.

Subterranean water is often secured for irrigation by means of artesian or flowing wells. The amount of water obtainable from artesian wells depends upon the head of pressure under which the water occurs and which varies greatly according to the geological formation. They are sometimes fed by underground streams and in other cases by water which has accumulated by seepage of surface water through strata of sand or gravel which are overlaid by impervious strata of clay or rock. The water percolating from the surface finds its lowest level and accumulates there, being continuously added to by the rainfall, until a large body is established under pressure.

If this store of water be tapped by a well it will rise in the pipe to the level of the land from which it was originally derived and which may be considerably higher than the mouth of the pipe, thus creating a spouting or flowing well. Frequently the water obtained from artesian wells is so permeated by alkali that it cannot be used for irrigation.

### Methods of Irrigation

It will be readily understood that great care must be exercised in irrigating by gravitation in regulating the velocity of flow, not only in the main and secondary canals, but also in the distributaries, irrigation ditches and furrows. If the flow be too rapid in any of these it will result in erosion of the soil and a waste of water.

The land to be irrigated should be made to slope as uniformly as possible, in order that every portion shall

derive equal benefit. Natural irregularities must be overcome by scraping and filling so that the irrigable field will present a perfect surface, with just enough slope to enable it to be thoroughly moistened.

If the surface is uneven the water will form pools, so that certain portions of the soil will absorb too much and become supersaturated while other places will remain dry. When the natural slope of the ground is too acute, it should be corrected by grading in such a way as to provide a series of checks which will serve to hold back the water and prevent its too rapid distribution, and in extreme cases terraces must be made—an almost universal practice in Switzerland and mountainous parts of Italy.

On the other hand, if the slope is too slight, the water may take so long in flowing over the field as to be lost by evaporation or absorption before it reaches the further end. Too steep slopes may be rectified by running small ditches or flumes down the slope of the ground and inserting falls in them to overcome the excess of slope, and by turning the water from them into lateral furrows and drills run at such an angle as to provide the proper fall.

A wasteful method of irrigation is often practised in the cultivation of fodder crops and cereals, meadow lands being flooded by simply turning on the water, where the slope of the ground is sufficient, and allowing it to soak into the soil. This is accomplished by conducting the water through a ditch following an upper level of the field. Breaks made at intervals in the side of the ditch allows the water to flow in a thin sheet over the surface of the ground. In many cases this is more wasteful of water than beneficial to the soil, since the surface of clayey land is apt to become parched and baked, forming a thin impervious crust under such treatment.



The check system is much in vogue in undulating districts, while the terrace method is used in more pronounced slopes. In level countries such as India and Arizona, irrigation is carried on by a checkerboard system of squares, ranging in size according to the slope of the ground, and separated from each other by ridges or levees from ten to twelve inches in height, in which openings are made leading from one square to another.

Water is admitted to one square at a time, and after sufficient has been absorbed is drawn off to the next square below, and so on till the whole field has been treated. Usually from four to twelve inches in depth of water is let in on a single watering, the number of waterings varying from two to five in a season, according to the crop, soil and climate.

The ordinary way of applying water to vegetables and grain fields is by furrows radiating from distributary ditches run round the upper slopes of the field. The furrows are run at various angles down the slope in such manner that their grade shall not be too steep.

In irrigating fruit trees and vines, the practice of direct flooding is objectionable, as the tendency of the water is to bring the roots to the surface and thus injure them. To obviate this, furrows are run from the ditches generally in a double row, one on each side of, and at a short distance from, the trees. By this means the water reaches the roots of the trees by soakage at some distance beneath the surface.

Another method, but a wasteful one, is to throw up ridges to prevent the water from reaching from three to four feet of the trees and then flooding the whole field with the exception of the spaces immediately surrounding the trees. There are many other methods of distributing water by surface irrigation governed by local custom or

individual experience, but the underlying principle is the same in all.

Subsurface irrigation is theoretically one of the best and most economical methods of supplying water. The principle is to replace seepage from above by absorption from below, which, to be perfect, should not wet the surface. The water thus applied should have the same temperature as the soil, and thus should not set back the plant growth; and provided the water does not reach the surface it is presumed that just the right quantity to produce the best results has been applied.

In sub-irrigation the water is conveyed in underground pipes which derive their supply from distributaries, which are pipes of larger size. The cost of preparing the land and installing this system is great, but where it proves successful, the greater expense is more than repaid by the saving of water, since the duty of water is greatly increased, reaching as high as 500 to 1,000 acres per second foot.

Although extensively employed in Southern California, sub-irrigation has not proven as satisfactory as anticipated. The pipes are often clogged by roots which in time burst or destroy them. The clogged pipes fail to supply water evenly and in consequence parts of the field become water-logged or sour. Sub-irrigation is expensive and troublesome to operate, and has been found unsatisfactory in many places where it has been tried.

### Irrigation Laws

Laws regulating the ownership of water and its use for irrigation are as diverse as the methods used for applying it to the soil. There are, however, certain underlying, broad principles which cannot be ignored, and, despite



the apparent confusion and contradiction of a multiplicity of statutes, these are invariably adhered to and applied in the administration of the law. It is being firmly established in every country where irrigation is practised that the original ownership of water rests in the community, and that no individual is entitled to more water than he can put to beneficial use, nor is he allowed to exercise ownership over water which he is not using.

The common law of England provides for the preservation of rivers and streams in their natural channels, and each owner of land bordering upon a stream is protected against any change which would interfere with his use and enjoyment of the water flowing through or past his property. This law of riparian rights, though well adapted to countries where water is not required for irrigation, would, strictly adhered to, cause serious inconvenience and hardship in the arid regions of Canada and the United States.

A modification of this law is generally conceded to be necessary, and many judges hold that a riparian owner is entitled to special privileges only to the extent to which these are utilized, and before he is upheld in preventing the diversion of a stream he must show that interference with his right would cause him the actual loss of water which he has been putting to beneficial use. The first individual who secures the right to divert water from a stream for the irrigation of a given area of land is by law and custom confirmed in his right against the claims of others who may come after him, provided that his use of the water does not constitute a waste, or that he ceases to use it for a beneficial purpose.

The pioneer irrigationist is thus protected and newcomers can only secure water after his legitimate needs have been served. This is called the right of priority, and is one of

the basic principles governing the granting of water rights on rivers and streams.

Theoretically the right of priority seems simple and just, but in application it often becomes complex and apparently unfair. For example, it would seem unreasonable that an individual, who may be idle or unprogressive, should enjoy a supply of water in perpetuity, while his more enterprising neighbors suffer for want of it, merely because he happened to secure his right a few days, months or years before they did. As a district develops and all the available water is needed, it would seem equitable that rights of priority should give way to some system through which the largest and best use of the supply would be secured.

A practice of what is called pro-rating water is finding favor in many places. Pro-rating means the division of the water proportionally to the available supply, and in application it entails the abandonment of a strict observance of priorities. It is often essential to the prosperity of a district that the method adopted by early settlers for the diversion and distribution of water be remodelled or completely changed, so as to secure the best possible service to all interested. The first attempts may have been crude and ill-calculated—for instance, the stream may have been tapped at an unsuitable point instead of at the highest level which the natural contour of the country permitted, and a readjustment of the system would probably interfere with certain individuals' priorities.

Other instances might be mentioned in which a strict adherence to priorities would conflict with the needs of the community, and in which the aim of lawmakers should be the securing of the greatest good to the greatest number.

An entirely different phase of the question is encountered



when the laws dealing with the concessions granted to, and the rights of, irrigation companies, whose business it is to construct irrigation works on a large scale and supply water to consumers, and charge for its use, Governments are induced to concede water rights to corporations where it is clearly in the public interest, or beyond the means of the individual to utilize the available water supply.

The several rights of diverting, carrying and supplying water to users may be conferred upon a company, but there is no actual conveyance to it of the water which still remains vested in the state. The company stands in the position of a trustee representing the state, and, although absolute owner of its canals, ditches and other works in which its capital is invested, it possesses only the right to use the water by supplying it to persons who in turn use it for beneficial purposes. If the company owns land it may, of course, use water for irrigation the same as an individual. The operations of irrigation companies are, as a rule, controlled by Government officials and engineers, whose duty it is to supervise the work and see that the public interest shall not be sacrificed.







